OXFORD

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

5th edition

Headway

Elementary Student's Book



Liz & John Soars • Paul Hancock

With Online Practice

5th edition

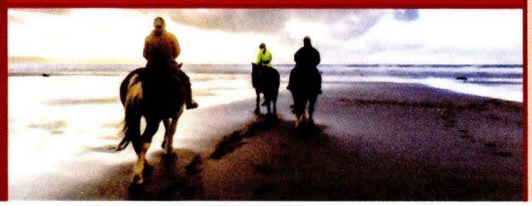
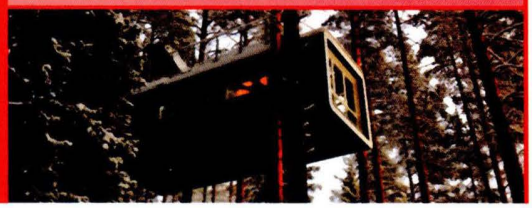
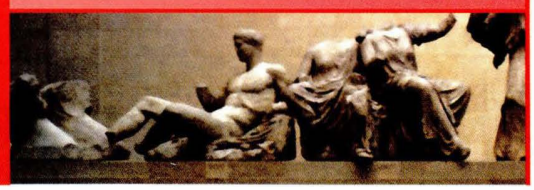
Headway

Elementary Student's Book

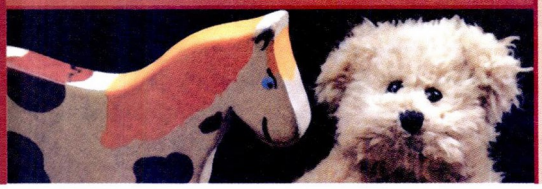
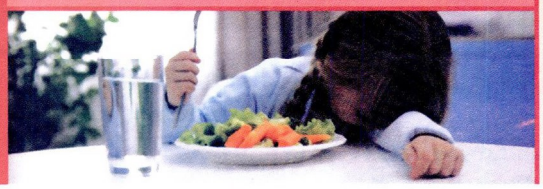
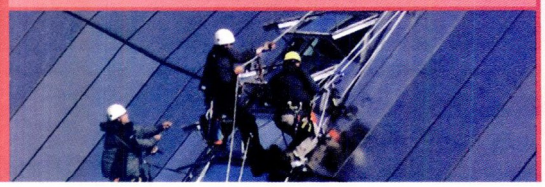
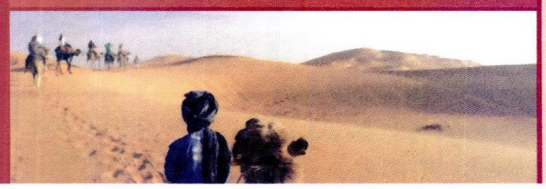
Liz & John Soars • Paul Hancock

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Contents

Unit	Grammar	Vocabulary
1 Nice to meet you! p9 	**Verb *to be*** p10 • *am/is/are* **Possessive adjectives** p10 • *my/your, his/her* **Verbs - *have/go/live/like*** *p12*	**Opposite adjectives** p15 • *good/nice* • *hot/cold* **The family** p16 • *father/mother* • *husband/wife*
2 Work and family life p19 	**Present Simple (1)** p20 • *he/she/it* • Questions and negatives	**Opposites** p25 • *early/late* • *big/little* **Jobs** p26 • *architect/dentist/nurse*
3 Time off p29 	**Present Simple (2)** p30 • *I/you/we/they* • *Questions and negatives*	**Seasons and months** p32 • *winter/autumn* • *January/February* **How do you relax?** p32 • *running/cycling/cooking*
4 House and home p39 	***there is/are*** p40 ***some/any/a lot of*** p42 ***this/that/these/those*** p42	**Prepositions of place** p41 • *near/next to/opposite* **Adjectives** p46 • Adjectives for *good* and *bad* • Adverb + adjective *really nice*
5 Super U! p49 	***can/can't*** p50 ***was/were/could*** p52	**Words that go together** p56 • noun + noun *motorbike* • verb + noun *play the violin* • prepositions *about/of/to*
6 Lessons in life p59 	**Past Simple (1)** p60 • Regular verbs • Irregular verbs • Time expressions	**Describing feelings** p66 • *-ed* and *-ing* adjectives *interested/interesting, bored/boring*

Reading	Listening	Speaking	Writing
A student's blog p14 • Maria's blog about her stay in London	**Where's Maria?** p15 • Five conversations with Maria in London	• Talking about you **p11 & p13** **Everyday English** p17 • Everyday conversations	**A blog** p18 • Writing an online journal
Worlds apart p24 • The Yanomami Indians of Brazil and Amish farmers in the US	**Describing jobs** p26 • What jobs are they talking about?	• Talking about family & friends **p23** • Talking about you **p25** • Talking about jobs **p26** **Everyday English** p27 • What time is it?	**Improving style** p28 • Using pronouns
Busy weekends p34 • *My weekend*, by horse-racing jockey Frankie Dettori, and singer/songwriter Alexandra Burke	**Your work-life balance** p36 • Do you live to work or work to live?	• Roleplay **p31** • Talking about you **p32, p33, p34 & p36** **Everyday English** p37 • Social expressions	**Form filling** p38 • An application form
Inside the Houses of Parliament p44 • A description of the Houses of Parliament	**What's in your bag?** p43 • Zoe describes what she has in her bag	• A nice place! **p41** • Project **p45** • Talking about you **p46** **Everyday English** p47 • Numbers and prices	**Describing your home** p48 • Linking words (1): *and, so, but, because*
A talented family p54 • The Kanneh-Masons – a musical family	**Great talents** p53 • Profiles of Pablo Picasso, Marie Curie, John Lennon, and Serena Williams	• Talking about you **p51 & p53** • What do you think? **p54** **Everyday English** p57 • Polite requests	**A formal email** p58 • Applying for a job
The meaning of life? p64 • When a businessman met a fisherman	**The year I was born** p62 • Great events from the year 2001	• What do you think? **p61 & p64** • Talking about you **p62 & p63** • Project **p63** ***Everyday English* p67** • What's the date?	**A biography** p68 • Linking words (2): *however, went, until*

Unit	Grammar	Vocabulary
7 Remember when … p69 	**Past Simple (2)** p70 • Questions and negatives • Time expressions	**Prepositions** p72 • *in July/at night/on Saturday* **Adverbs** p76 • *quickly/sadly/seriously*
8 Love it or hate it! p79 	**Count and uncount nouns** p80 • *some, any, a lot of* • *Do you like … ?/Would you like … ?* • *much, many* ***a, an* or *some*** p82	**Food and drink** p80 • *tea/coffee/apple/banana* **Daily needs** p86 • *aspirin/plasters/shampoo*
9 Life in the city p89 	**Comparative adjectives** p90 ***have got*** p92 **Superlative adjectives** p92	**Town and country** p96 • *museum/market/field/river* **Prepositions of movement** p97 • *along/through/over*
10 What are you up to? p99 	**Present Continuous** p100 • Questions and negatives • Present Simple and Present Continuous ***Whose* or *who's?*** p103	**Describing people** p106 • Appearance *pretty/tall/ blue eyes* • Clothes *a suit/a dress*
11 Going for it! p109 	***going to* for future** p110 **Seeing the future now** p112 **Infinitive of purpose** p113	**Places and activities** p113 • School *pick your kids up* • Barber's *have a haircut* **What's the weather like?** p116 • *sunny/rainy/cloudy*
12 Have you ever … ? p119 	**Present Perfect** p120 • *ever* and *never* • *yet, already* and *just* **Tense revision** p123	***take* and *get*** p126 • *take photos/take a test* • *get ready/get married* **Transport and travel** p127 • *airport/railway station/bus stop*

Audioscript p129 Grammar reference p143 Extra material p149

Reading	Listening	Speaking	Writing
Hedy Lamarr and Rosalind Franklin p74 • The story of two forgotten female firsts	**The good old days?** p71 • A grandson asks his grandfather about his life	• Talking about you p72 & p76 • Talking about your life p73 • What do you think? p74 • Telling a story p76 **Everyday English** p77 • Special occasions	**Telling a story** p78 • Using time expressions
We all love ice cream! p84 • The history of ice cream from 200 BC to today	**A meal to remember** p85 • Special memories of special meals	• Talking about you p83 & p86 • In your own words p84 • What do you think? p85 **Everyday English** p87 • Shopping in the High Street	**Formal/informal writing** p88 • Two emails
Life at the top p94 • Living the high life in skyscrapers in Australia and the US	**An American in London** p91 • Larry compares London and New York **Getting around Sherford** p97	• Talking about you p91 & p96 • I've got a bigger house than you! p92 • What do you think? p94 **Everyday English** p97 • Directions	**Describing a place** p98 • Relative pronouns *which, who, where*
One minute in the life of the world! p104 • What's happening in one minute in our busy world?	**What is happening in the world right now?** p104 • The global statistics of everyday life **Describing people** p106 • Who is being described?	• Talking about you p101 • What do you think? p104 • Describing people p106 **Everyday English** p107 • Everyday situations	**Comparing and contrasting** p108 • Linking words (3): *but, however, although*
Human towers p114 • The Castellers of Catalonia and the human towers they build	**Why am I going there?** p113 • Rob's busy day **What's the weather going to be like?** p116 • A weather report	• Talking about you p111 & p113 • Roleplay p114 • What do you think? p114 • What's the weather like? p116 **Everyday English** p117 • Making suggestions	**Descriptive writing** p118 • Describing a holiday
Explorers – ancient and modern p124 • The story of four 21st century explorers	**Who is it?** p124 • Descriptions of past explorers	• Talking about you p121 & 126 • What do you think? p124 **Everyday English** p127 • Transport and travel	**A poem** p128 • Choosing the right word

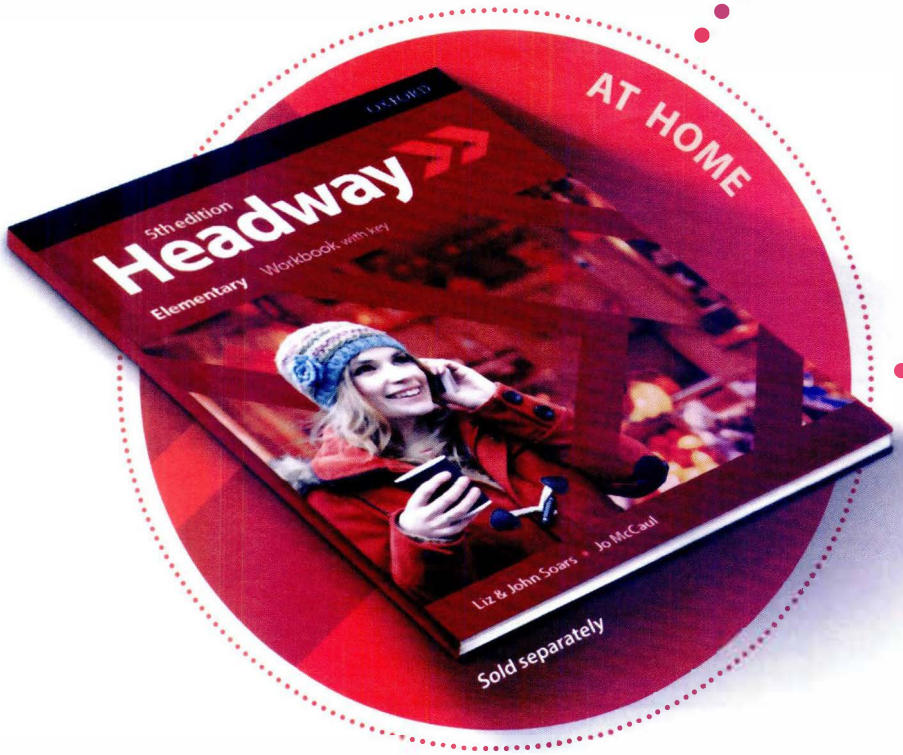
Go to **headwayonline.com** to download the Wordlist and full Audioscript.

Course overview

5th edition
Headway

Welcome to **Headway 5th edition**. Here's how the blended syllabus helps you link learning in the classroom with meaningful practice outside.





Student's Book

All the language and skills you need to improve your English, with grammar, vocabulary and skills work in every unit. Also available as an ebook.

Use your Student's Book in class with your teacher.

Workbook

Exclusive practice to match your Student's Book, unit by unit.

Use your Workbook for homework or for self-study to give you new input and practice.

Go to **headwayonline.com** and use your code on your Access Card to log into the Online Practice.

ACTIVITIES AUDIO VIDEO WORDLISTS



LOOK AGAIN

- Review the language from every lesson
- Watch the videos and listen to all the class audio again

PRACTICE

- Develop your skills with extra Reading, Writing, Listening and Speaking practice

CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

- Test yourself on the main language from the unit and get instant feedback
- Try an extra challenge

Online Practice

Look again at Student's Book language you want to review or that you missed in class, do extra ***Practice*** activities, and ***Check your Progress*** on what you've learned so far.

Use the Online Practice at home to extend your learning and get instant feedback on your progress.

headwayonline.com

Videos

Go to **headwayonline.com** to find a video to use with each unit.

1 London

A profile of things to see and do in London.



2 A day in the life

Alex, a bike messenger in New York, describes what a typical day is like for him.



3 Jobs

A description of what a hairdresser, a paramedic, a cake decorator and a florist do at work and in their free time.



4 Home away from home

A look at three interesting places to spend a holiday - a roundhouse, a water tower and a bunker.



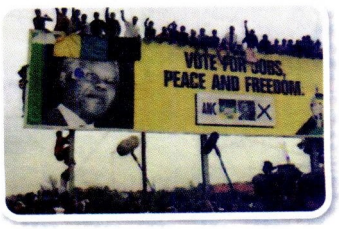
5 A music school

A profile of a music school where talented young musicians hope to become world famous one day.



6 The year I was born

A discussion of key events from history from the 1960s, 1970s, 1980s and 1990s.



7 A special occasion

Four people describe special occasions from their lives.



8 A world of food

A look at international food, restaurants and cooking.



9 Two cities

A description of things to do and see in Paris and Dubai.



10 An hour around the world

A look at what is happening at exactly the same time in different time zones around the world.



11 A charity expedition

Ben and Amy describe an amazing expedition around the world to raise money for charity.



12 Experiences

People describe amazing experiences they have had.



Nice to meet you! 1

- Grammar *am/is/are*, possessives, *have/go/live/like*
- Vocabulary The family
- Everyday English Everyday conversations
- Reading Maria's blog
- Listening Where's Maria?
- Writing A blog



Watch the video introduction online

Use your **Workbook** for self study

Go online for more practice and to *Check your Progress*

STARTER

Grammar *am/is/are, my/your*

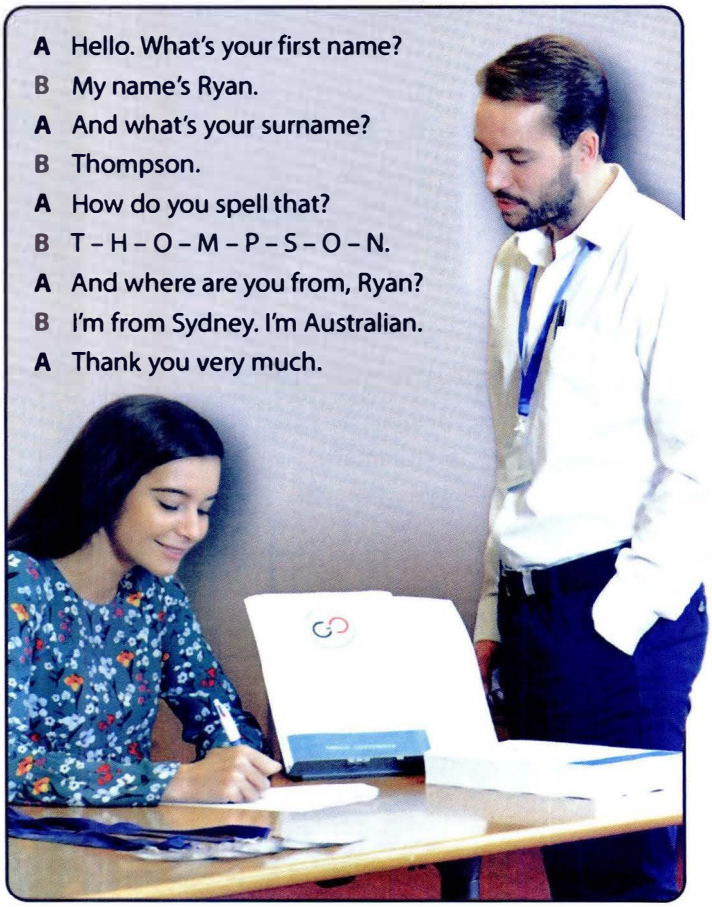
1 1.1 Listen and say the alphabet around the class.
A, B, C, D, E, F …

2 Stand up in alphabetical order and introduce yourself to the class.



Hello!

1 1.2 Read and listen. Practise the conversation.

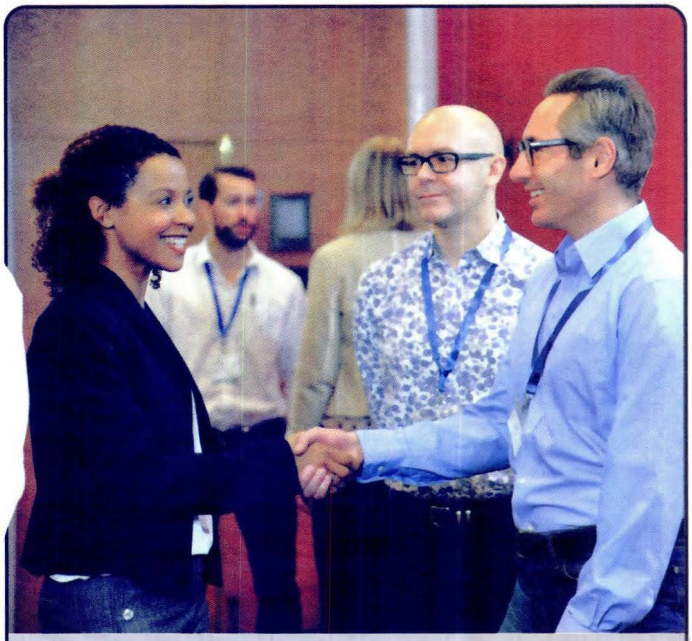


A Hello. What's your first name?
B My name's Ryan.
A And what's your surname?
B Thompson.
A How do you spell that?
B T – H – O – M – P – S – O – N.
A And where are you from, Ryan?
B I'm from Sydney. I'm Australian.
A Thank you very much.

What's = What *is* **name's** = name *is*
I'm = I *am*

2 Complete the conversation.

1.3 Listen and check.



C Hello. My ***name's*** Cathy. What's _____ name?
D Dan.
C _____ are you from, Dan?
D _____ from Cambridge. Where _____ you from?
C _____ _____ Cambridge, too!
D Oh, nice to meet you!

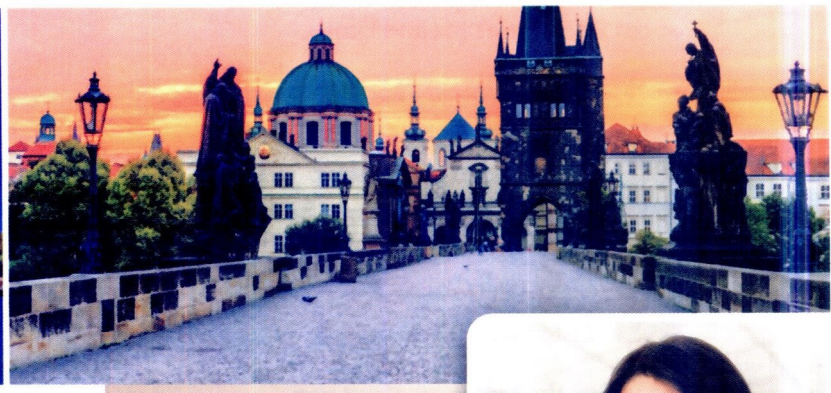
3 Stand up! Go to other students and say hello.

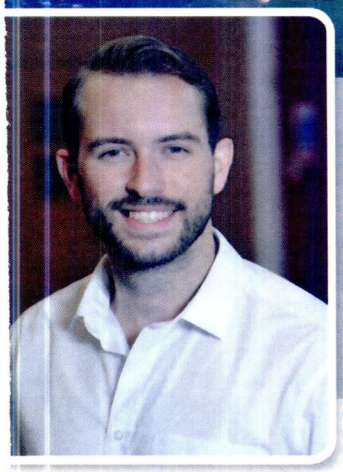
Hello! My name's … . What's your name?
Dieter.
Where are you from, Dieter?
I'm from … . Where … ?

Personal information *he/she, his/her*

1 Look at the information about Ryan and Charlotta.







Ryan Thompson	NAME	Charlotta Kotkova
Sydney	CITY	Prague
30	AGE	22
312-555-0749	PHONE NUMBER	43 44 900 4754
rythompson@tmail.com*	EMAIL ADDRESS	charlotta123@czechmail.cz
No	MARRIED?	No

*email addresses: @ = at . = dot



2 1.4 Listen and complete the questions about Ryan.

1 What's *his* surname? *Thompson*
2 _____ his first name? *Ryan*
3 Where _____ he from? *Sydney*
4 How old _____ he? *30*
5 What's _____ phone number? *312-555-0749*
6 _____ his email address? *rythompson@tmail.com*
7 Is _____ married? *No, he isn't.*

Practise the questions and answers with a partner.

3 1.5 Listen and complete the questions about Charlotta.

1 What's *her* surname?
2 What's _____ first name?
3 Where _____ she from?
4 How old _____ _____?
5 What's _____ phone number?
6 _____ her email _____?
7 _____ _____ married?

Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the chart of the verb ***to be***.

Positive	Negative
I'm = I am	I *'m not*
you're = you are	you *aren't*
he's = he is	he _____
she's = she is	she _____

2 Write the **possessive adjectives**.

Pronouns	Possessive adjectives
I	*my*
you	_____
he	_____
she	*her*

Grammar reference 1.1–1.2 p143

Talking about you

4 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- What's your surname?
- What's your first name?
- How do you spell your surname?
- How old are you?
- What's your phone number?
- What's your email address?
- Are you married? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.

Yes, I am. NOT Yes, ~~I'm~~.

Jason's family

Verbs – *have/go/live/like*

1 1.6 Look at the photos. Listen to and read about Jason Cole's life and family.

2 Complete the sentences about Jason.

1 I _____ to University College London.
2 I _____ a brother and a sister.
3 I _____ with my parents in a house in West London.
4 My family really _____ Amy!

1.7 Listen and check.

3 Complete the sentences about you.

I'm ...
I live in ...
I have ...
I go to ...
I really like ...

Tell a partner.

Possessive 's

4 Read the Grammar Spot.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Look at the sentences.

My name's Jason.	's = is
My brother's name is Ethan.	's = possession (*his name*)

2 Find more examples of 's in the text. Do they mean *is* or possession?

Grammar reference 1.3 p143

5 Answer the questions.

1 Who's Ethan?
He's Jason's brother.
2 Who's Emily? Andrew? Megan? Amy?
3 What's his father's job?
He's a ...
4 What's his mother's job?



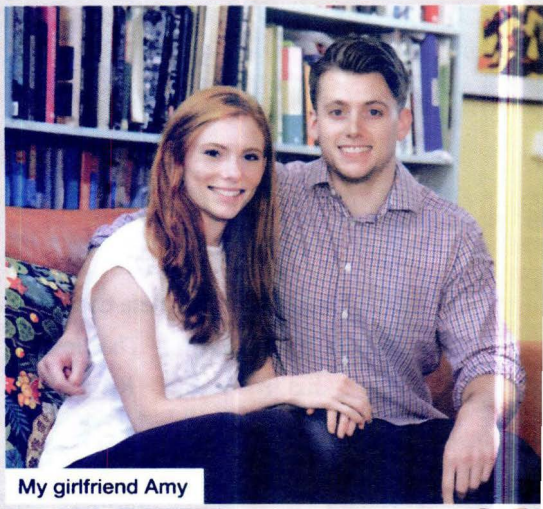
My name's Jason Cole,

and I'm from London.

I'm 21 years old, and I'm a student. I go to University College London. I have a brother and a sister. My brother's name is Ethan. He's 16 and he's at school. My sister's name is Emily. She's 25 and she's married. I live with my parents and my brother in a house in West London. My father, Andrew, is a lawyer, and my mother, Megan, is a teacher. I'm not married, but I have a girlfriend. Her name's Amy. She's lovely! My family really like her!



My brother Ethan



My girlfriend Amy



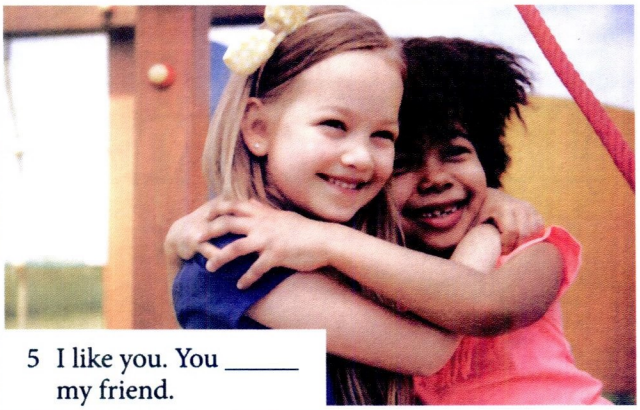
My parents Megan and Andrew

My sister Emily and her husband

Practice *be – am, is, are*

1 Complete the sentences with the verb *to be*.

1 Where _____ you from?
2 '_____ you from London?' 'Yes, I _____.'
3 'How old _____ you?' 'I _____ 17.'
4 '_____ your sisters married?' 'No, they _____.'



5 I like you. You _____ my friend.

6 Marta _____ from Italy, she's from Hungary.
7 '_____ your mother a doctor?' 'No, she _____.'
8 I _____ German, I'm French.

1.8 Listen and check.

2 What is 's? Is it *is* or possession?

1 My name's Juan. 's = is
2 My sister's friend isn't married. 's = possession
3 Anna's Italian.
4 She's a teacher.
5 Her brother's wife isn't English.
6 My mother's name is Grace.

Pronunciation

3 1.9 Listen and tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

1 a ☐ He's from Italy.
b ☐ She's from Italy.
2 a ☐ What's his name?
b ☐ What's her name?
3 a ☐ We aren't English.
b ☐ We are English.
4 a ☐ His teacher is from England.
b ☐ He's a teacher from England.
5 a ☐ My sister is married.
b ☐ My sister isn't married.
6 a ☐ Your French is good.
b ☐ You're French. Good!

Spelling

4 1.10 Listen and complete the names and email addresses.

Names

1 V _ _ E _ _ A
2 J _ S _ _ _ B _ _ E _
3 K _ T _ _ M _ _ _ _ _ _ S

Email addresses

4 l._____8@mailserve.com
5 zac_____ @plusmail.co_____

Talking about you

5 Make true sentences about you with the verb *be*.

1 I *'m not* at home.
2 We _____ in class.
3 We _____ in a café.
4 It _____ Sunday today. It _____ _____.
5 My teacher's name _____ Richard. It _____ _____.
6 My mother and father _____ English.
7 I _____ married.
8 My grandmother _____ 75 years old.

Read your sentences to your partner.

Writing

6 Write about you and your life. Read it aloud to the class.

My name's ...
I'm from ...
I'm a ...
I go to ...
I have ...
My sister's name ...
I live ...
My father's a ...
My mother's a ...

Go online for more **grammar** practice

Reading and listening

A student's blog

1 Look at the photos of London. What can you see? What other famous places do you know in London?

2 Work with a partner. Make sentences about London with adjectives from the box.

big	small	nice	beautiful
expensive	interesting	difficult	easy
friendly	cold	sunny	good

1 London *is/isn't a/an* _____ city.
2 The people *are/aren't* _____.
3 The weather *is/isn't* _____.
4 English *is/isn't a/an* _____ language.

Discuss your ideas with the class.

3 1.11 Maria is a student in London. Read and listen to her blog. Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false sentences.

1 Maria is from Spain. ✓
2 She's in Madrid. ✗ She isn't in Madrid. She's in London.
3 Andrew and Megan have two sons.
4 Maria is in a small school.
5 Her school is in the city centre.
6 The students in her class are all from Europe.
7 Debbie is Maria's teacher.
8 The National Gallery is expensive.
9 The Underground is difficult to use.
10 The food is bad.

4 Complete the questions about Maria. Ask and answer them with your partner.

1 *Where's* Maria from? *Spain.*
2 _____ her school? *In the centre of London.*
3 What's _____ name? *Cole.*
4 _____ their house? *In Notting Hill, in West London.*
5 How _____ the two brothers? *Ethan is 16 and Jason is 21.*
6 What's Debbie's _____? *She's a teacher.*
7 _____ OK? *Yes, it is. It's cold, but sunny.*

1.12 Listen, check and practise.

5 Look at the photos of people on Maria's page. Who can you see?



MARIA'S BLOG

▼ MY LONDON FAMILY



▼ MY SCHOOL



▼ LONDON

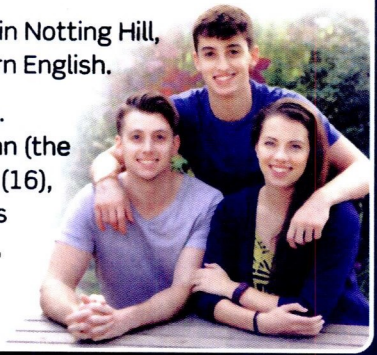




POSTED ON APRIL 6TH BY MARIA

Day 1: Welcome to my new page! All the posts are in English!

Hello! I'm a Spanish student. I'm in Notting Hill, London, England. I'm here to learn English.

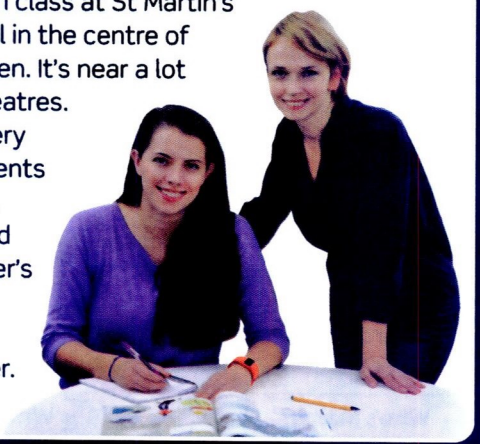


My English family's name is Cole. Andrew (the husband) and Megan (the wife) have three children: Ethan (16), Jason (21) and Emily (25). Emily's married. They're all very friendly, but they speak very fast! It's difficult to understand them.

POSTED ON APRIL 8TH BY MARIA

Day 3: My first day at school!

Today is my first English class at St Martin's College. It's a big school in the centre of London, in Covent Garden. It's near a lot of shops, cafés and theatres. It's great! My class is very international! The students are from Italy, Hungary, Japan, China, Egypt, and Switzerland. Our teacher's name is Debbie. She's very young and she's very nice. I really like her. She's a good teacher.



POSTED ON APRIL 15TH BY MARIA

Day 10: I love London!

Hello again! It's great here. I love London! It's big and very interesting. I like shopping here, but it's very expensive. I go to the museums and galleries. The National Gallery is free! And I go to the parks. They are really beautiful. I go by bus or by Underground – it's very easy. The weather's OK. It's cold, but sunny. And the food is great! There are lots of Spanish restaurants in London! Check out my photos.

Listening

6 1.13 Listen to five conversations. Complete the chart with places, and the people in the box.

a gallery attendant	Debbie, her teacher
a waiter	Carlos, a student
~~Andrew Cole~~	

	Where's Maria?	Who is she with?
1	*In Notting Hill*	*Andrew Cole*
2		
3		
4		
5		

Vocabulary

7 What is the opposite adjective?

1 **horrible** coffee — a *nice* meal
2 a **big** city — a _____ town
3 a **hot** day — _____ weather
4 a **good** student — a _____ teacher
5 a **cheap** café — an _____ restaurant
6 an **old** man — a _____ girl
7 a **slow** bus — a _____ car
8 an **easy** exercise — _____ homework

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the verb *to be*.

I	*am*
it	_____
you	_____
we	_____
he	_____
they	_____
she	_____

2 Complete the possessive adjectives.

I	*my*
she	*her*
you	_____
we	_____
he	_____
they	_____

Grammar reference 1.1–1.2 p143

Go online to **watch** a video about more things to do in London



Vocabulary and speaking

The family

1 Complete the chart with words from the box.

~~mother~~	boyfriend	wife	son
niece	grandmother	aunt	brother

THE FAMILY

father and **mother**
husband and _____
_____ and **daughter**
_____ and **sister**
grandfather and _____
uncle and _____
nephew and _____
_____ and **girlfriend**



2 Complete the sentences

1 My mother's father is my *grandfather*.
2 My father's mother is my _____.
3 My mother's sister is my _____.
4 My aunt's husband is my _____.
5 My sister's son is my _____.
6 My brother's daughter is my _____.

Use these words to complete sentences 7, 8 and 9.

cousin	children	parents

7 Your mother and father are your _____.
8 Your son and daughter are your _____.
9 Your aunt's children are your _____.

3 1.14 Listen and write the names.

Lily	Jacob	Sophie	Sam	Tom	Nicole	Claire	Michelle



4 Write the names of some people in your family. Ask and answer questions with your partner.

Marco Laura and Rosa Roberto

Who's Marco?
He's my grandfather.

Who are Laura and Rosa?
They're my cousins.

Who's Roberto?
He's ...

5 Talk to your partner about your family.

My grandfather, Marco, is 72. My grandmother, Antonella, is ...
They live ... I really like my uncle ... and ...
I have ... cousins. They ...

Go online for more **vocabulary** practice

Everyday English Everyday conversations

1 Work with a partner. Make different conversations.

Student A			Student B				Student A	
Hi, Hello, Good morning,	John! Jill! Mr Jones. Mrs Fox.	How are you? How are you today?	I'm	fine, good, very well, all right, OK,	thank you. thanks.	And you?	Fine, Good, Very well, All right, OK, Not bad,	thanks. thank you.

2 1.15 Listen and compare. Practise again.

3 Look at the photos. Complete the conversations.



later Bye Have

A It's time for school. _____, Mum!

B Goodbye darling! _____ a good day!

A Thanks. See you _____!



Can How of course

C Morning! _____ are you today?

D I'm fine, thanks. _____ I have an espresso, please?

C Yes, _____. Anything else?

D No, thanks.



just Good afternoon help

E _____! Can I _____ you?

F No, thank you. We're _____ looking.

E That's fine.

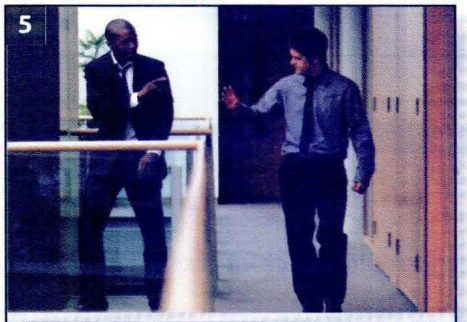


Pleased to meet this is

G Bob, _____ Jane. She's from our New York office.

H Hello, Jane. _____ to meet you.

I Hello, Bob. Nice _____ you, too.



a good weekend Bye to you

J Thank goodness it's Friday! _____, Simon!

K Bye, Jeff. Have _____!

J Thanks. Same _____.

K See you on Monday.



well See you night

L Good _____! Sleep _____!

M Nigh' night! _____ in the morning!

1.16 Listen and check.

4 Work with a partner. Learn one of the conversations. Stand up! Act out the conversation.

Go online for more **speaking** practice

Writing A blog

Writing an online journal

1 What is a blog? Are you a 'blogger'?

2 Complete the blog about you.

Blog posts | Images | Links

MY ENGLISH BLOG



Day 1: Welcome to my blog!

Posted on _____

Hello! My name's _____. I'm from _____ and I'm _____ years old. I'm a student. I go to _____. I want to learn English because _____.

Day 2: Meet my family!

Posted on _____

I want to tell you about my family. My mother's name is _____.

She's _____. My father's name is _____. He's _____.

My family is/isn't very _____.

I have _____, _____.

We live in _____, near _____.

Day 3: Come to my school!

Posted on _____

My school is in _____. It's near _____ and it's very _____.

My teacher's name is _____. The students' names are _____.

They are from _____.

After class, I _____ and _____.

3 Talk about your blog to a partner.

4 Choose a topic and think of a title. Write your blog entry for Day 4. Read it aloud to the class.

Day 4: _____

Posted on _____

Hello again! _____

_____

_____

Go online for more **writing** practice

Work and family life 2

- Grammar Present Simple (1) – *he/she/it*
- Vocabulary Jobs
- Everyday English What time is it?
- Reading Worlds apart
- Listening Five conversations
- Writing Using pronouns



1 Where are they from? South Africa? India? Vietnam?

2 What is in the photo?

Watch the video introduction online

Use your **Workbook** for self study

Go online for more practice and to *Check your Progress*

Grammar Present Simple – *he/she/it*

STARTER

What are the **jobs** of the people in your family? Tell the class.

My father is a doctor.

My mother's a …

My brother …



Two very different jobs

1 2.1 Listen to and read about **James Stuart** and **Maggie Howell**. What are their jobs? Where do they work?

2 Underline all the verbs in the text: *is*, *comes*, … What is the last letter of all these verbs?

Pronunciation

3 2.2 Listen and complete the chart.

/s/	/z/	/ɪz/
likes	*comes*	*teaches*

Practise saying the verbs.

4 Complete the sentences.

1 James is a fireman. Maggie *is* a zoologist.
2 She comes from the US. He _____ from Scotland.
3 James lives in England. Maggie _____ in Connecticut.
4 She works at the Wolf Centre. He _____ at a fire station.
5 He drives fire engines. She _____ schools and _____ children about wolves.
6 Maggie likes her job, and James _____ his job, too.
7 He goes to the gym in his free time. She _____ her dog.
8 She plays tennis. He _____ snooker.
9 Maggie _____ married. Her husband's name is Spencer. James _____ married, too.

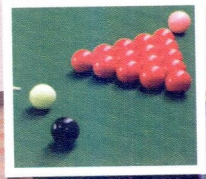
2.3 Listen and check. Read the sentences aloud.

JAMES STUART Fireman



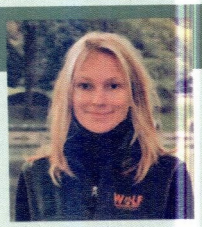
James, 26, is a fireman. He comes from Scotland, but now he lives in Sussex, England. He works at a small fire station near Brighton. James drives the fire engines. He works 10 days a month. He's at work for 24 hours, and then he has 48 hours off. It's a difficult job, but he likes it.

He's married, with two children, and on his free days he takes Lara (6) to school and enjoys playing with Max (4). He also goes to the gym, and he plays snooker.





MAGGIE HOWELL Zoologist



Maggie, 45, is a zoologist. She studies wolves and she's the Director of the Wolf Conservation Centre in New York State. She lives in Connecticut and works with her husband, Spencer. Maggie also visits schools and teaches children about wolves. She works 5 days a week, but she goes to the Wolf Centre on Sundays, too, because she likes it there!

In her free time she reads a lot, and watches TV with her daughter, Eleanor. She also plays tennis, and walks their dog, Drew.



Maggie with Atka, an Arctic wolf

www.nywolf.org

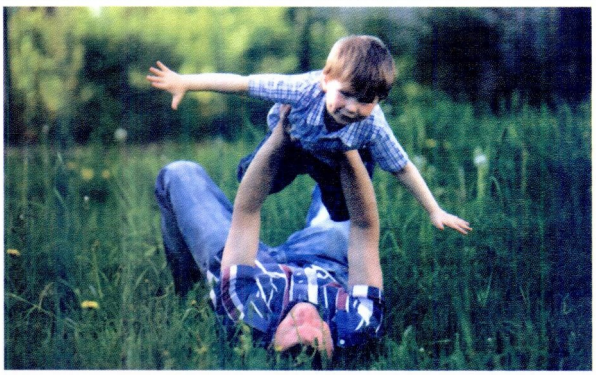
5 Which of the words in the box are about James (**J**)? Which are about Maggie (**M**)?

26	J	10 days a month	
Director		visits	
fireman		Sundays	
Spencer		gym	
Scotland		snooker	
drives		TV	
5 days a week		dog	

Use the words to talk about them with your partner.

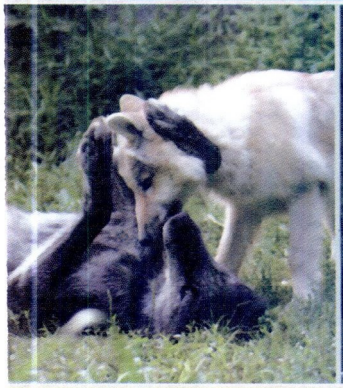
James is 26. He is a fireman. He …

Maggie is …





Wolf Conservation Center





What does he do?

Questions and negatives

1 2.4 Read and listen. Complete the lines about James. Practise them with a partner.

1	What does James do? (= *What's his job?*)	He's a _____.
2	Where does he come from?	_____.
3	Does he live in Scotland?	_____, he doesn't.
4	Does he live in England?	_____, he does.
5	Does he play tennis?	_____, he doesn't play tennis. He _____ snooker.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb *live*.

Positive He _____ in England.

Negative He _____ _____ in Scotland.

Question 'Where _____ he _____?' 'He lives in England.'

2 2.5 Listen. Practise the pronunciation of *does* and *doesn't*.

/dəz/ /dʌz/ /dʌznt/

Does he play football? Yes, he **does**. / No, he **doesn't**.

Grammar reference 2.1–2.2 p143

2 Complete the questions and answers about James.

1 'Where ***does*** James ***work*** ?'
'At a fire station.'

2 '_____ he drive the fire engines?'
'Yes, he _____.'

3 'How many days a month _____ he work?'
'_____.'

4 'What _____ he _____ in his free time?'
'He _____ to the gym and he _____ snooker.'

5 '_____ he like his job?'
'Yes, he _____.'

6 '_____ he have a dog?'
'No, he _____.'

2.6 Listen and check. Ask and answer the questions about James with a partner.

3 Ask and answer questions about Maggie with a partner.

What does Maggie do? She's a zoologist and she's …

Practice

The film star and the footballer

1 Look at the photos of **Natalie Portman** and **Gareth Bale**. What do you know about them?

2 Read the information about them. Complete it with the words in the box.

French	golf	dances
daughters	Wales	Los Angeles

Asking questions

3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about Natalie and Gareth.

What does Natalie do?

She's an actress, and a film director.

- What … do?
- … speak French?
- Where … come from?
- How many children …?
- Where … live now?
- What … the children's names?
- Where … work?
- What … in her/his free time?

Stress and intonation

4 2.7 Listen to eight wrong sentences about Natalie and Gareth and correct them.

Natalie lives in England.

No, she doesn't. She lives in the US.

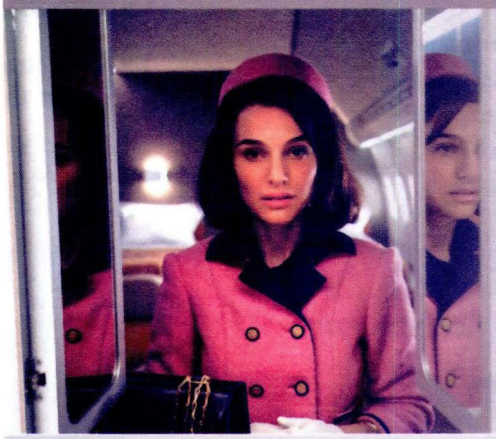
2.8 Listen and check. Practise again.

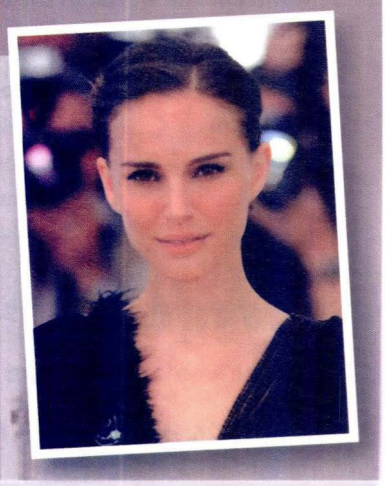


Go online to watch a video and learn about what a bike messenger does at work and in his free time.



Natalie Portman

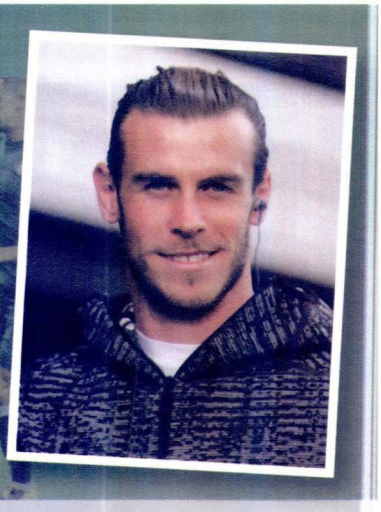




Job	actress and film director
Country	Israel
Home now	_____, US
Place of work	US and all over the world
Languages	English, Hebrew, _____
Family	married to ballet dancer Benjamin Millepied, a son, Aleph, and a daughter, Amalia
Free time	reads, _____, and goes ice-skating

Gareth Bale





Job	footballer
Country	_____
Home now	Madrid, Spain
Place of work	Bernabéu Stadium, Madrid
Languages	English, Spanish
Family	married to Emma Rhys-Jones, two _____, Alba Violet and Nava Valentina
Free time	plays _____



i love mum



Talking about family and friends

5 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the correct form.

1 My husband *comes* (come) from Peru.
2 My grandmother _____ (live) very near us.
3 My mother _____ (love) reading.
4 My father _____ (travel) a lot in his job.
5 My sister _____ (speak) Spanish very well. She _____ (want) to learn Italian, too.
6 My brother _____ (play) video games all the time.
7 My friend Jim _____ (write) an Internet blog.

6 Match the questions to the sentences in **5** to continue the conversations.

a ☐ Does she want to be an interpreter?
b [1] Where exactly in Peru?
c ☐ Does she visit you often?
d ☐ What does he write about?
e ☐ What does she read?
f ☐ Where does he go?
g ☐ What does he like playing?

7 2.9 Listen and check. What extra information do you hear?

Listening

8 2.10 Listen to five conversations. What are they about?

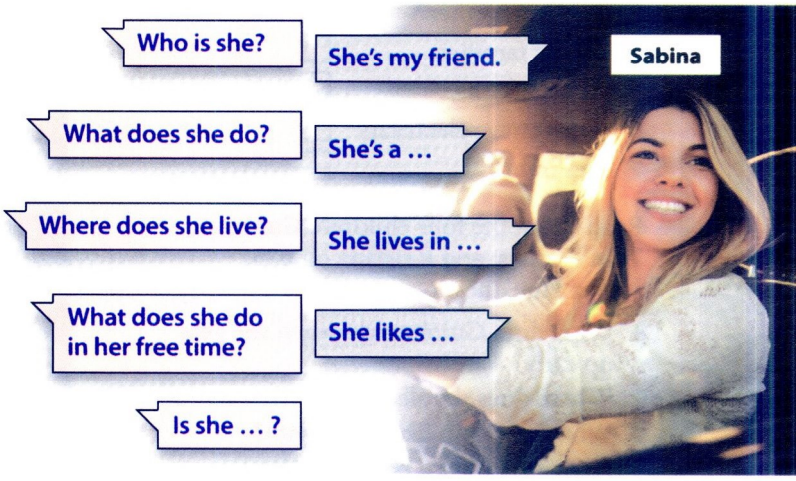
hobbies	cars	~~work~~	university	languages

1 *work* _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____

9 2.10 Listen again. For each conversation, write some of the verbs you hear.

1 *like, works* _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____

10 Write the name of a friend or relative. Ask and answer questions with your partner.



11 2.11 Listen and tick (✓) the sentences you hear.

1 a ☐ He likes his job.
b ☐ She likes her job.
2 a ☐ She loves walking.
b ☐ She loves working.
3 a ☐ Does he speak English?
b ☐ Does he like English?
4 a ☐ Does she have three children?
b ☐ Does he have three children?
5 a ☐ What does he do in his free time?
b ☐ Where does he go in his free time?

Go online for more **grammar** practice

Reading and speaking

Worlds apart

1 Look at the photos of the Yanomami and the Amish. Where do you think they live?

2 In photos **A–L** find …

☐ a farm	☐ rainforest
☐ a monkey	☐ a board game
☐ a horse	☐ a bow and arrow
☐ a cow	☐ a light
[A] a hut	☐ the sun
☐ a bird	☐ old-fashioned clothes

3 Read the introductions to *The Yanomami and the Amish*. Write **Y**, **A**, or **B** (**both**).

Who ...?

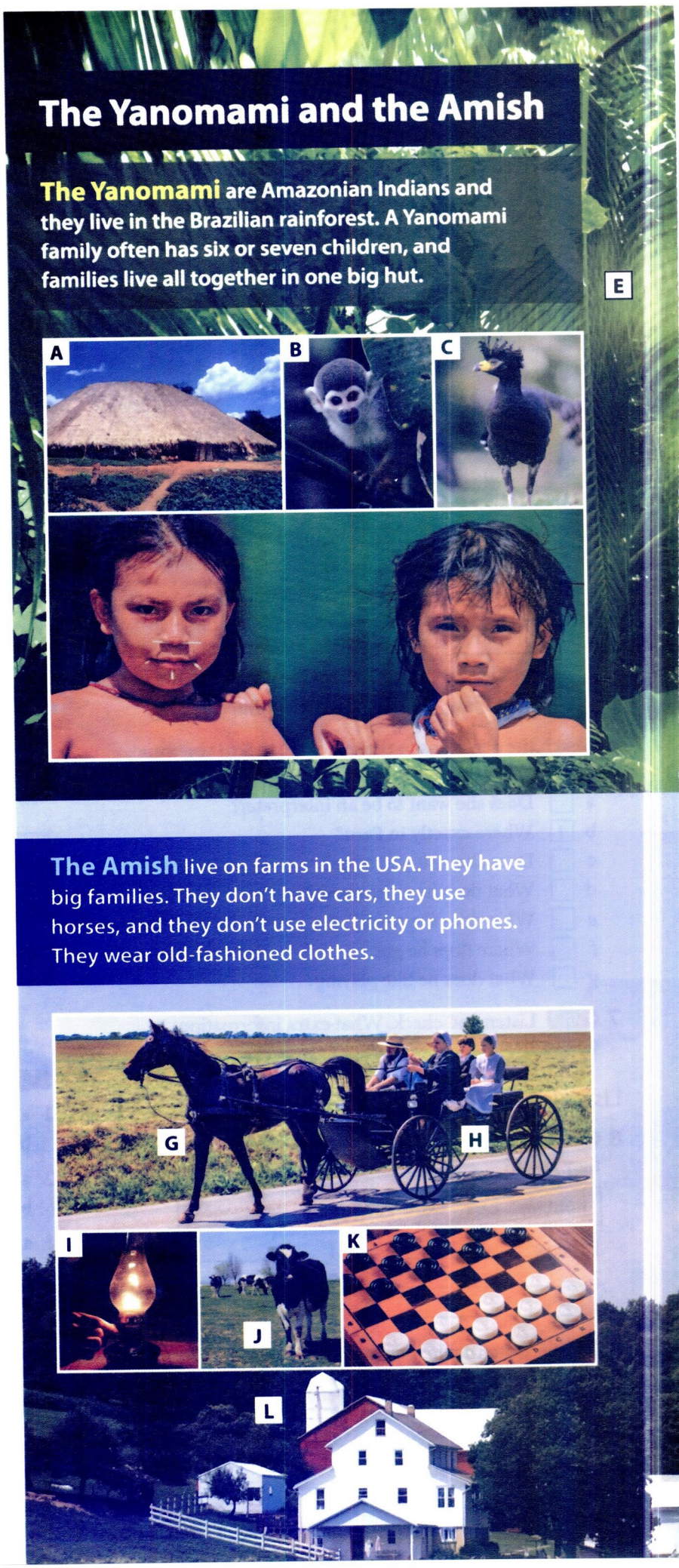
1 lives in the rainforest [Y]
2 wears clothes [A]
3 lives all together ☐
4 has big families ☐
5 lives on farms ☐
6 doesn't have electricity ☐
7 lives in huts ☐

4 Read about the four children, **Guiomar**, **Toin**, **Tomas**, and **Kristina** on p25. Answer the questions.

1 What does Guiomar do when she gets up early?
2 Where does she sleep?
3 Who does Toin like being with?
4 Does Toin have a pet?
5 What does Tomas do in the morning?
6 Why doesn't he like school?
7 Why doesn't Kristina have school?
8 Why does she go to bed early?

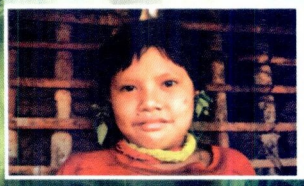
5 Correct the sentences.

1 Guiomar goes to bed late.
She doesn't go to bed late. She goes to bed when the sun goes down.
2 She wears beautiful clothes.
3 Toin hunts monkeys.
4 Tomas gets up late.
5 He goes to church on Saturdays.
6 Kristina plays baseball.



D

Guiomar is nine. She gets up early, but she doesn't go to school. She helps her mother to find food and learns how to cook with her. Then Guiomar plays with the other children. She goes to bed when the sun goes down because they don't have lights. It's hot in the rainforest, so she sleeps outside.

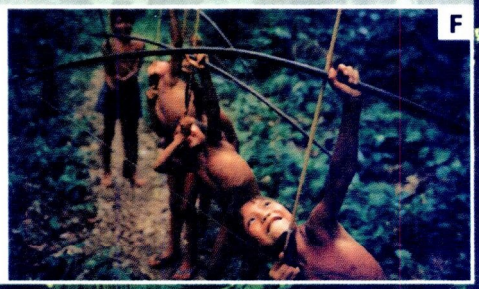


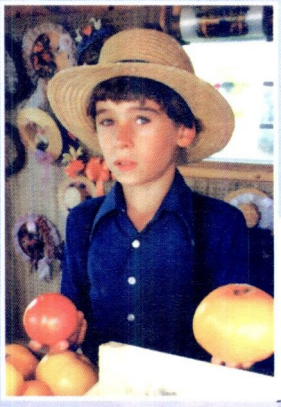
'I help my mother with breakfast, and I cook dinner with her, and my grandmother, too. It's hot so I don't usually wear clothes.'

Toin is 11. He likes being with his father. His father doesn't go to work. He hunts in the rainforest, and he teaches Toin to use a bow and arrow. In the evening, Toin eats, sings, and dances with all the other children and their families.

'I don't go to school. I go out with my father and learn how to hunt, sometimes for 2 or 3 days. We usually hunt birds. I take my pet monkey with me!'

F





Tomas is 12. He starts work on the farm in the morning and then has school at home with the other children. He also has homework. On Sundays, he goes to church, and visits other families. He likes playing baseball.

'I get up at 5 o'clock and I help my father with the cows. Then I have breakfast. I don't like school – I like doing work and being outside!'

Kristina is 14 and she has six brothers and sisters. She doesn't have school now – it stops when you're 14. She cooks, cleans and does the washing with her mother. In the evenings, she reads and plays board games. She likes singing.

'Family life is important for us. I help my mother with the little children. I don't go to bed late – our house doesn't have electric lights.'



Vocabulary

6 Find opposites in the words in **A** and **B**.

A	B
early	work
big	evening
teach	stop
play	late
get up	little
morning	learn
start	go to bed

7 Work in pairs. Use the words to tell your partner about the people.

Guiomar gets up early. She …

Guiomar
get up • early
not • go • school
learn • cook • mother
play • children

Toin
like • father
hunt • rainforest
take • pet monkey
evening • eat, sing, dance

Tomas
work • farm • morning
help • father • cows
not like • school
like • baseball

Kristina
six brothers • sisters
not have school
evening • read • play
not go to bed late

Talking about you

Work in groups. Talk about your family life. How is it different from the Yanomami and the Amish people?

My family is small.

I often help my mother with the cooking.

My sister goes to bed very late.

Vocabulary and listening Jobs

1 Match photos **A–J** with these jobs.

- ☐ architect
- ☐ dentist
- ☐ hairdresser
- ☐ taxi driver
- ☐ nurse
- ☐ receptionist
- ☐ journalist
- ☐ pilot
- ☐ lawyer
- ☐ accountant

2 Work with a partner. Complete the sentences in **A** with a job.

A	B
1 She's a _____.	She cuts hair.
2 He's a _____.	He flies from Heathrow.
3 She's a _____.	She works in a hotel.
4 She's an _____.	She designs buildings.
5 He's a _____.	He works for a top law firm.
6 He's a _____.	He drives all day.
7 They're _____.	They write news stories.
8 She's a _____.	She looks after people's teeth.
9 She's a _____.	She works in the City Hospital.
10 He's an _____.	He likes working with money.

2.12 Listen and check.

Say a sentence in **B**. Your partner replies with a sentence from **A**.

He works for a top law firm. → He's a lawyer.

3 Complete the conversations with a job from exercise 1.

1 **A** What does Michael do?
B He's _____. He writes for *The Times* newspaper.
A Oh, that's interesting.

2 **C** What does your father do?
D He's _____. He designs house and apartment buildings.
C And your mother? What does she do?
D She's _____. She teaches French and Spanish.

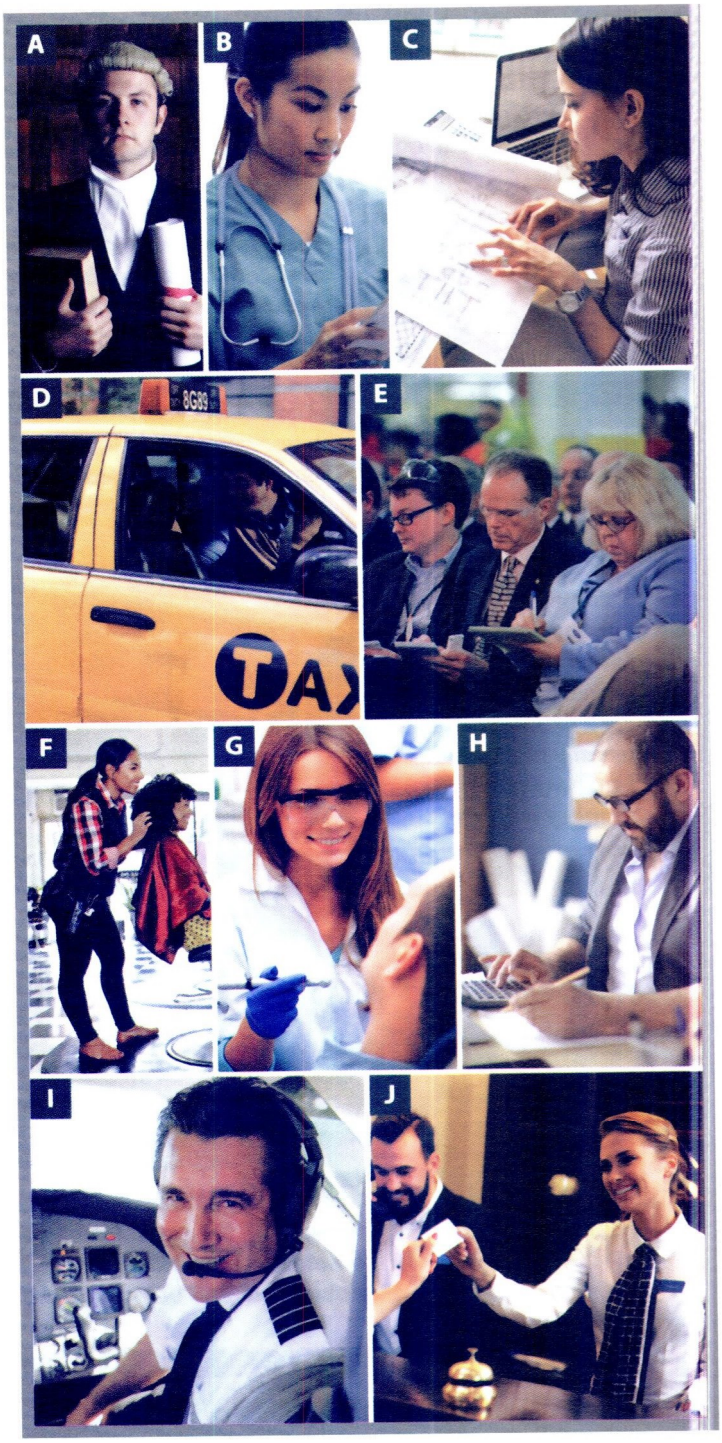
3 **E** Does your sister work in the town centre?
F Yes. She's _____. She works in the Ritz Hotel.

4 **G** Are you a doctor?
H No, I'm not. I'm _____.
G Oh, but I want to see a doctor.

5 **I** My brother's _____ with British Airways. He travels all around the world.
J My brother travels a lot, too – in London! He's _____.

2.13 Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

Go online for more **vocabulary** practice



Speaking

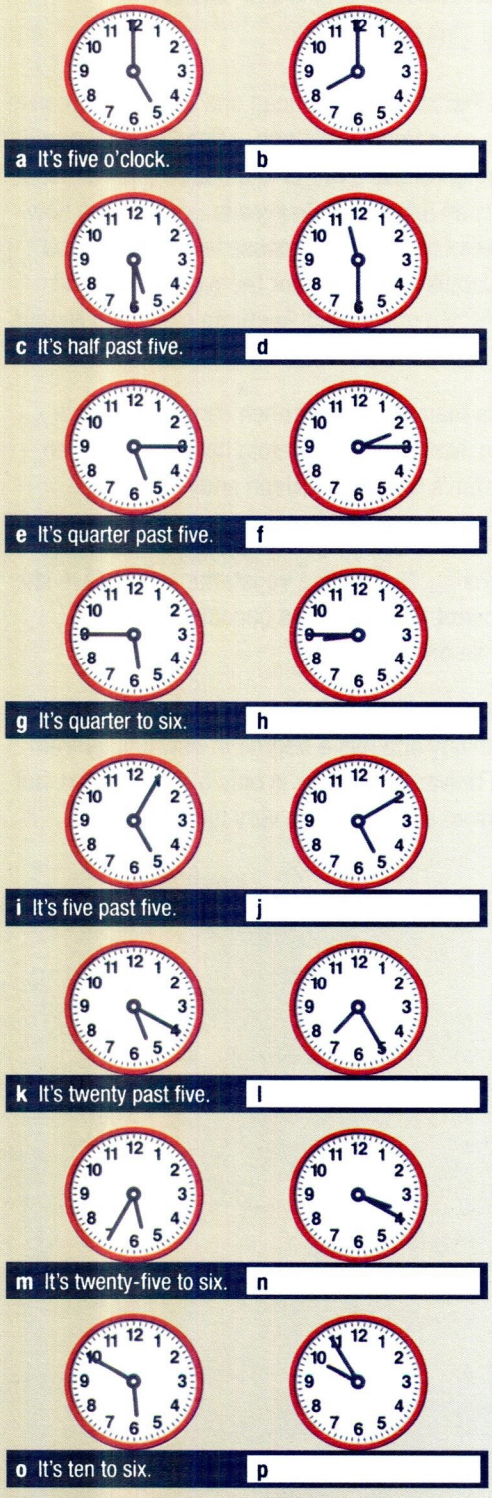
4 Work with a partner. Have conversations about your family and friends.

What does your sister do? → She's a student.

Oh, what does she study? → Physics.

Everyday English What time is it?

1 Look at the clocks. Write the times.



2.14 Listen and check. Practise saying the times.

2 2.15 Listen to four of the times again. Work with a partner. Say some of the other times in the same way.

3 2.16 Listen and look at the times.



4 2.17 Listen and draw the times on the clocks.

It's twenty to twelve.

A  B  C  D 

5 Work with a partner. Draw clocks on a piece of paper. Ask and answer about the time.



6 2.18 Listen and complete the conversations. Practise them with a partner.

1 **A** Excuse me. Can you tell me the _____, please?
B Yes, of course. It's _____ after eight o'clock.
A Thank you _____ much.

2 **C** What's the _____ in Sydney right now?
D It's _____ eleven o'clock at night.
C Oh! That's why you want more coffee!

3 **E** What time does your watch say?
F Er, it says it's eight _____.
E Ah, I think my watch is _____. It says eight fifty-two.

4 **G** Excuse me. What time does the gym close?
H At _____ o'clock.
G And what time is it _____?
H It's twenty-five _____. You're OK. No need to hurry.
G Thank you.

Go online for more **speaking** practice

Writing Improving style

Using pronouns

1 Complete the table.

Subject	Object pronouns	Possessive adjectives
I	me	my
_____	you	_____
he	him	his
_____	her	_____
it	it	its
we	us	_____
_____	them	their

2 Circle the pronouns and underline the possessive adjectives in these sentences.

1 Her son is in my class. I like him.
2 My grandmother has a new phone. She doesn't like it.
3 They like their teacher. He helps them.

Grammar reference 2.3 p143

3 Complete the sentences with the correct pronoun.

1 I like my brother's new girlfriend, but *she* doesn't like *me*.
2 Tom has two sons. ____ often plays football with ____.
3 That's my dictionary. Can I have ____ back, please?
4 Mr Banks is our new teacher. We like ____ a lot.
5 Rosa and I are good students. ____ like our teacher and she likes ____.
6 Our teacher gives ____ a lot of homework.
7 Kate likes Joanna, but Maria doesn't like ____ at all.
8 Mike always buys a newspaper. ____ reads ____ on the bus.
9 Look! This is a photo of ____ with my family.
10 Sally works with Paul and Sue. ____ has lunch with ____ every day.

4 Read the text about Natalie Portman. Answer the questions.

- What is her job?
- Why does she like living in Los Angeles?
- Where does her husband come from? What does he do?
- Why doesn't she want to eat animals?

5 Rewrite the text with pronouns to make it more natural.

Natalie Portman is American and Israeli. Portman is her grandmother's name ...

6 2.19 Listen and check/compare.

Go online for more writing practice

Natalie Portman

The small actress with a big name!

Natalie Portman is American and Israeli. Portman is Natalie's grandmother's name – Natalie's real name is Hershlag. Natalie's father is a doctor and Natalie's mother is an artist. Natalie lives in Los Angeles now – she likes Los Angeles because 'everyone smiles there'. Natalie works all over the world. Paris and Berlin are two of Natalie's favourite cities and Natalie loves to visit Paris and Berlin.

Natalie is married to the French dancer Benjamin Millepied. Natalie and Benjamin have two children – the children's names are Aleph and Amalia.

Natalie dances and ice-skates in her free time, and loves cooking. Natalie is a vegetarian – she says she doesn't want to eat animals because she loves animals so much.

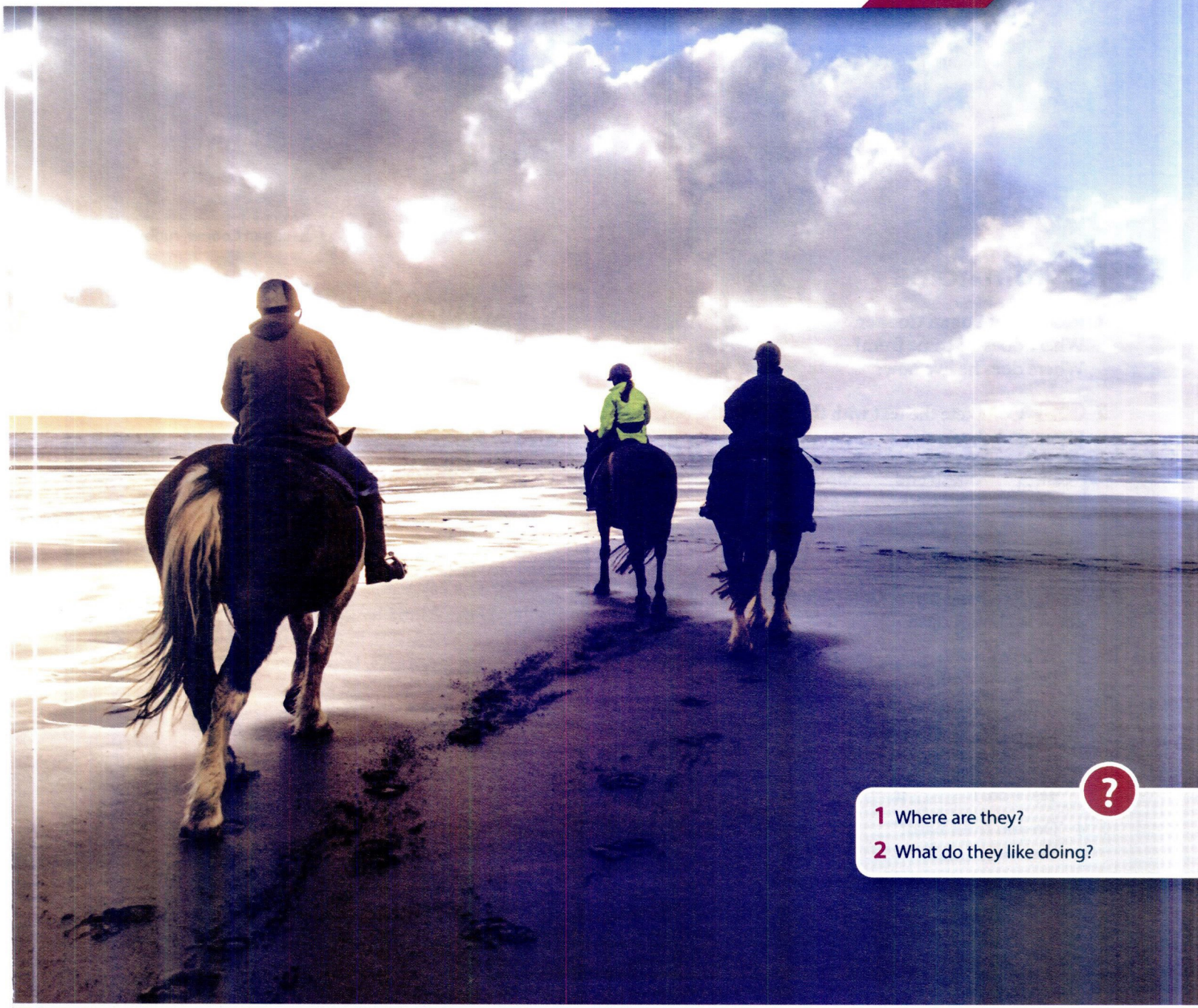
Natalie has an IQ of 140. Natalie is very interested in psychology and has a degree in psychology from Harvard University. Natalie is only 5' 3" (160 cm), but Natalie is an actress with a very big name.



irlanguage

Time off 3

- Grammar Present Simple (2) – *I/you/we/they*
- Vocabulary Leisure activities
- Everyday English Social expressions
- Reading Busy weekends
- Listening Your work-life balance
- Writing Form filling



1 Where are they?
2 What do they like doing?

Watch the video introduction online

Use your **Workbook** for self study

Go online for more practice and to *Check your Progress*

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Grammar Present Simple – *I/you/we/they*

STARTER

1 What day is it today? Say the days of the week.

2 Which days are the weekend? Which days are you busy?



Logan Cooper, rugby player

Far from home

1 Read about **Logan Cooper**. Where does he come from? Where does he live now?

2 3.1 Complete the text with the verbs in the box. Listen and check.

~~comes~~	doesn't do	hopes	lives	plays
trains	goes back	shares	has	

'Sport is my life!'

'I work hard ... but I'm lucky! I love what I do.' says Logan Cooper.

Logan Cooper is 19 years old. He [1] *comes* from Perth, Australia, but he now [2] _____ in Newcastle, in the north of England. He's a rugby player. He [3] _____ rugby for *The Newcastle Rebels* and he [4] _____ every day from Monday to Friday for the BIG game on Saturday. Sunday is his one free day, his day off! He [5] _____ _____ much on Sundays. He [6] _____ a flat near the sports ground with Tony, another player from the team. Every summer he [7] _____ _____ to Australia for one month. One day he [8] _____ to play rugby for his country.

Questions and negatives

3 3.2 Read and listen. Complete the questions and answers about Logan.

1 'Where do you _____ from?'
'Perth, Australia.'

2 'Where do you _____ now?'
'Newcastle, in the north of England.'

3 'Do you like rugby a lot?'
'Yes, I do. I _____ it.'

4 'Do you train hard?'
'Yes, we _____.'

5 '_____ you relax on Saturdays?'
'No, I don't. We always _____ matches.'

6 '_____ you _____ rugby on Sundays?'
'No, we _____. It's our day off.'

Practise with a partner.



Angel of the North, iconic sculpture near Newcastle

4 3.3 Read the questions. Then close your books, listen to Logan and answer them.

1 Where do the players train?
2 How do they train?
3 What do Logan and Tony do on Friday evenings?
4 What do they do on Sundays?

5 Read and complete the text. Use the verbs in the box in the correct form.

cooks	go (x2)	love	miss
relax	~~train~~	want	not do
~~not go~~	not drink	not feel	

'I live for my sport. I love it!'

'We [1] *train* hard every weekday, usually at the sports ground, but sometimes we [2]_____ running or cycling in the countryside. We cycle for miles, often to the sea. I really [3]_____ the beaches near Newcastle, they're beautiful, but I [4] *don't go* swimming there – I never swim – the North Sea is too cold. It's freezing, summer and winter, not like in Australia! Tony [5]_____ swimming sometimes – but then he [6]_____ the cold ... he's from Newcastle!

Saturday is the BIG day, Match Day! On Friday evening, Tony always [7]_____ a huge meal for us – white rice or potatoes, with chicken and green vegetables, but of course we [8]_____ any alcohol! I love the excitement on Saturday – especially when we win!

Sunday? ... Sunday, we [9]_____ much, we're so tired. We just [10]_____ and watch TV – sport, of course. My favourite is the skiing, 'Ski Sunday', and football, I'm a *Newcastle United* fan – of course. Oh, and I 'Skype' my mum and dad in Australia. I [11]_____ them a lot. They [12]_____ me to play for Australia one day.'

3.3 Listen again and check.

Roleplay

6 Work with your partner. Use the prompts to make questions to ask Logan.

- **Where do you come from?**
- **... like living in Newcastle?**
- **Where ... live in Newcastle?**
- **How often ... you train?**
- **... you always train at the sports ground?**
- **What ... you and Tony ... before the match?**
- **What ... do on Fridays/Sundays?**
- **... you like any other sports?**
- **... miss your family?**

7 One of you is Logan Cooper, the other is a journalist. Ask and answer the questions. Begin like this:

J: Hi, Logan! Good to meet you. You're a great rugby player. Can I ask you some questions?

L: Yes, of course.

3.4 Listen and compare.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the table for the **Present Simple**.

	Positive	Negative
I/You	*work*	*don't work*
He/She		
It		
We/They		

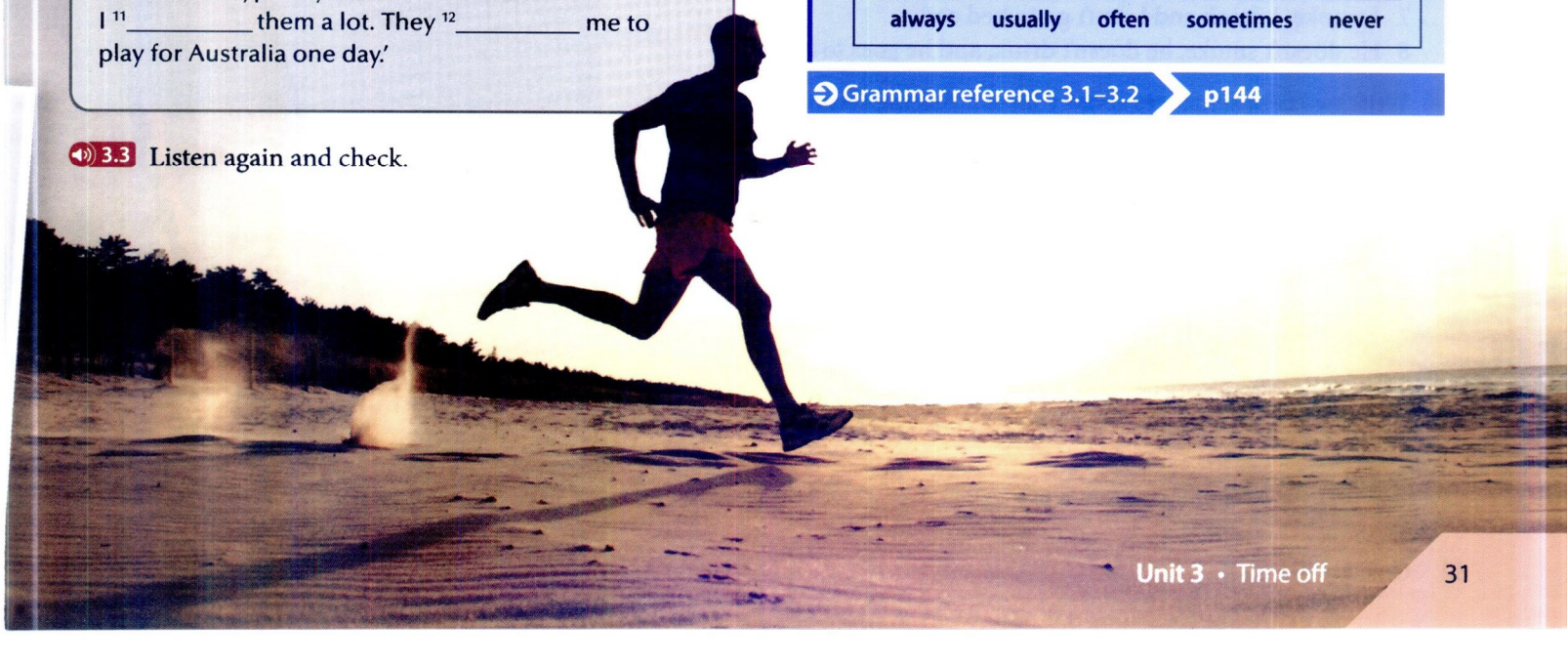
2 Complete the questions and answers.

1 Where _____ you work? Where _____ she work?
2 _____ you work in London? Yes, I _____.
3 _____ he work in London? No, he _____.

3 Find and underline these adverbs in the text.

100%		50%		0%
always	usually	often	sometimes	never

Grammar reference 3.1–3.2 p144



Practice

Talking about you

1 3.5 Match the questions and answers. Use the words in the box to complete the questions. Then listen and check.

What	~~What time~~	Where	When	Who	How	Do	Why

Questions	Answers
1 *What time* do you get up?	a Yes, I do sometimes.
2 _____ do you live with?	b Usually late, about midnight.
3 _____ do you travel to school?	c At about 7 o'clock.
4 _____ you go out on Fridays?	d We often go to Spain.
5 _____ do you do on Sundays?	e My parents and my sister.
6 _____ do you go on holiday?	f Because it's always sunny.
7 _____ do you like to go there?	g I always walk.
8 _____ do you go to bed?	h I don't do much. I like to relax.

2 Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Give true answers. Then tell the class about you and your partner.

Maria gets up at eight. I get up at 7.30 on weekdays, but ...

Positives and negatives

3 Make the sentences opposite.

1 I text my friends all the time.
I don't text my friends all the time.
2 She doesn't speak Spanish.
3 They want to learn English.
4 I'm tired and I want to go to bed.
5 We don't eat in restaurants because we like cooking.
6 Emma isn't happy because she doesn't have a new car.
7 I smoke, I drink and I don't go to bed early.
8 He doesn't smoke, he doesn't drink, and he goes to bed early.

4 Write two false sentences about yourself. Ask the class to correct them.

I like playing football.

You don't like football. You hate it!

Erika goes to university.

She doesn't go to university. She works in a bank.

Go online for more **grammar** practice

Vocabulary and listening

How do you relax?

1 Answer the questions.

1 What season is it now?
What are the other seasons?
2 What month is it now?
Say all the months.
3 Which months are the different seasons?

2 Look at photos **A**–**P**. Match the words and photos.

Which activities usually go with one season? Which go with more seasons?

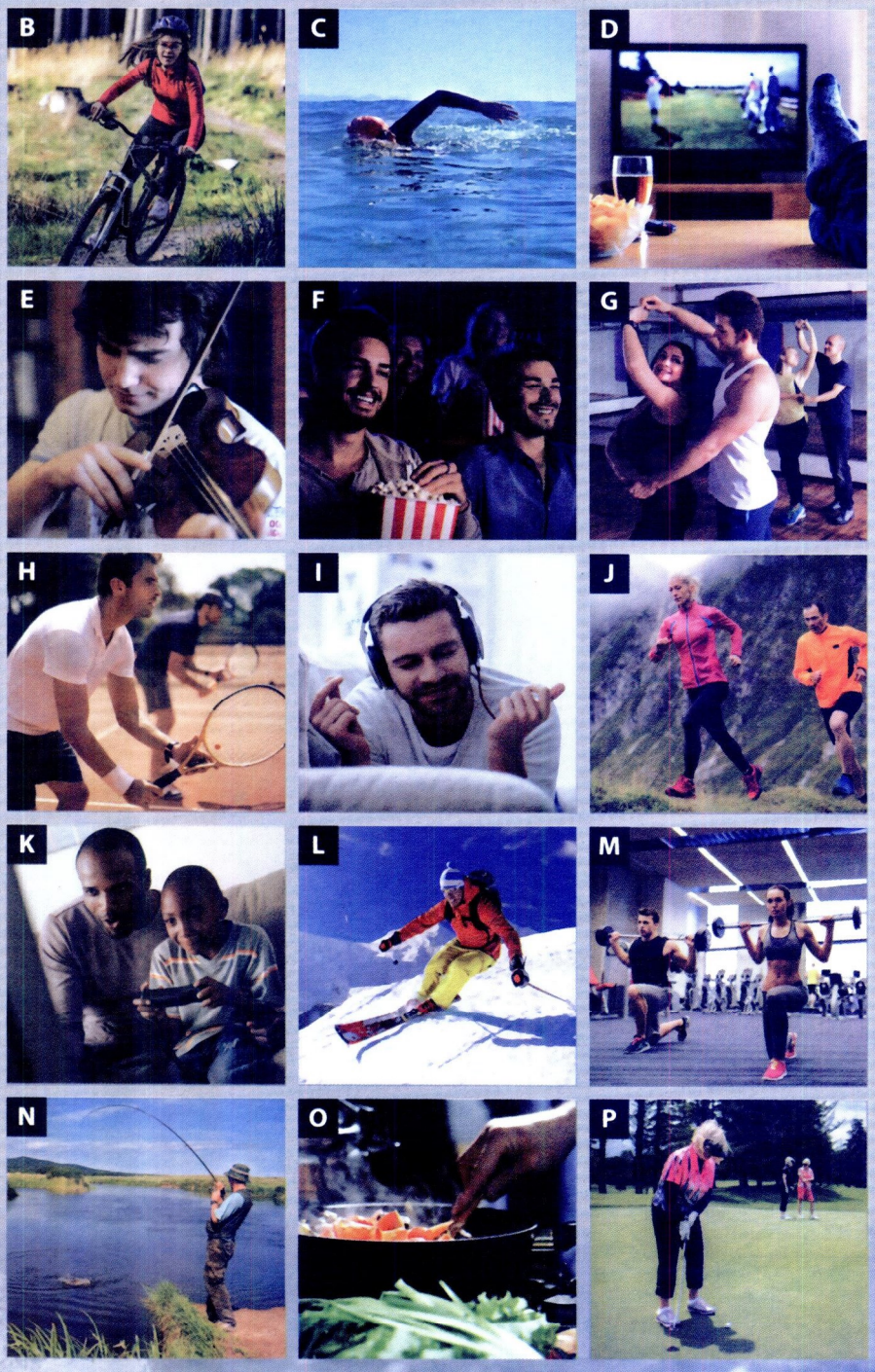
You play golf in summer.

But I play golf in all seasons!

- ☐ playing golf
- ☐ going to the cinema
- ☐ playing tennis
- ☐ swimming
- ☐ windsurfing
- ☐ going to the gym
- ☐ playing a musical instrument
- ☐ watching TV
- ☐ playing computer games
- ☐ listening to music
- ☐ dancing
- ☐ running
- ☐ fishing
- ☐ skiing
- ☐ cycling
- ☐ cooking







3 3.6 What do the people like doing in their free time? When?

	What?	When?
Anna		
Roger		
Linda		
Adam & Josh		
Sue & Bob		

GRAMMAR SPOT

like + -ing

I **like** playing golf.

I **don't like** running.

Grammar reference 3.3 p144

4 Discuss in groups what you think your teacher likes doing.

I think he/she likes going to the cinema.

No, I think he/she prefers watching TV.

Ask your teacher questions to find out who is correct.

Do you like playing tennis?

Talking about you

Tell the other students what you *like* doing and what you *don't like* doing. Ask questions about the activities.

I don't watch TV much, but I like playing computer games.

Oh, really? What do you play?

Why don't you watch TV?

Go online for more **vocabulary** practice

Reading and speaking Busy weekends

1 Match a verb in **A** with the words in **B**.

A	B
be	music
watch	a fan of jazz
listen to	sport on TV
go	pyjamas
get up	for work
put on	a competition
set off	dinner for friends
win	late
cook	horse riding

3.7 Listen and check. Can you remember the sentences?

2 Look at the photos and read the introductions about Frankie Dettori and Alexandra Burke. What are their jobs? What do they do at weekends?

3 Work in two groups.

Group A: Read about **Frankie Dettori**.
Group B: Read about **Alexandra Burke**.

4 Answer the questions about your person.

1 Does *he/she* have busy weekends?
2 Who does *she/he* like to be with?
3 Does *he/she* have any pets? What?
4 What does *she/he* do on Friday evening?
5 Does *he/she* like cooking?
6 What food does *he/she* like?
7 What does *she/he* like doing on Saturday?
8 Where does *his/her* family go on Sunday?

5 Work with a partner from the other group. Compare Frankie and Alexandra. What's the same? What is different?

They both spend time with their families.

Alexandra doesn't have any children, but Frankie has five.

Talking about you

On a piece of paper, write three things you like doing at weekends. Put all the pieces of paper together. Take turns to pick one and guess who it is.

He likes going to clubs, cycling, and ...

It's Pierre!

No, it's Marcus!

My weekend

FRANKIE DETTORI MBE:
Champion Horse-racing Jockey

by OLIVIA PARKER

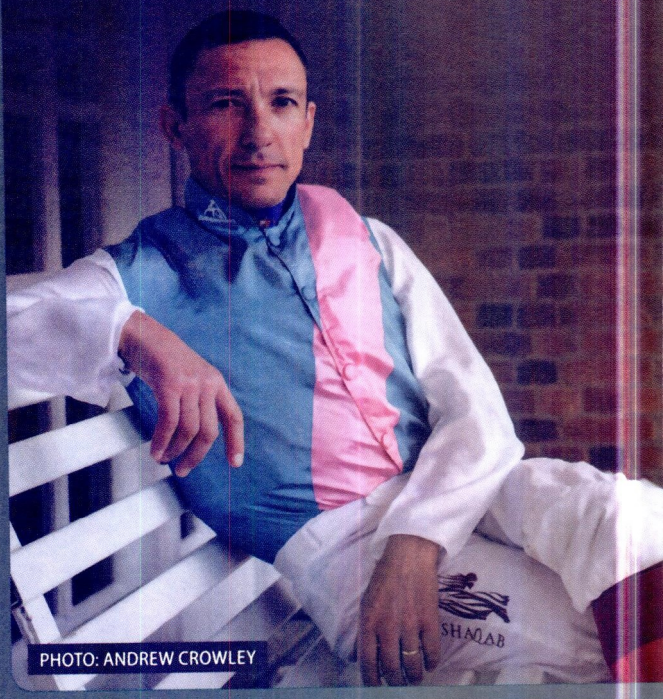


PHOTO: ANDREW CROWLEY

ALEXANDRA BURKE:
Singer/songwriter and actress

by CASILDA GRIGG



Frankie Dettori was born in Milan, Italy in 1970. He now lives in England near Newmarket, a market town famous for its race courses. His wife, Catherine, is English. They have five children, Leo, Ella, Tallula, Rocco, and Mia. He doesn't have many weekends off.

Frankie says: 'I don't have many free weekends because on Saturdays and Sundays I ride. I often have Mondays off, but then everybody is at work, so I have no friends to play with. That's very sad.

I have some weekends free, and I like coming home to my house, near Newmarket. It's nice – I get home on a Friday night, put on my pyjamas and watch TV. Brilliant! But, it's very noisy – we have five kids and a lot of pets. One of my daughters got an emu on the Internet, he's called Bruce and lives in the garden. We also have a gecko – it's my son's – a hedgehog, and two donkeys.

On Saturday nights, I sometimes cook. I usually do fish and chicken, but I cook a good pasta as well – obviously Italian food is my favourite. I'm a big fan of Japanese food as well.

On Sundays, my kids often compete in pony club shows. Pony club competitions last a whole day. We pack a picnic, the ponies and our three dogs and all set off for the show, a happy family. I like watching the kids on their horses.

In the evening, I usually watch a football game. I'm an Arsenal fan. I'd love to be a footballer, but I'm too small. By the end of the weekend, the house is a mess – there are children's toys and clothes everywhere. Catherine gets the kids to bed and I have a glass of wine.'



Alexandra Burke was born in London. She now lives in a village near the city. She is one quarter Jamaican, Indian, Irish and English. Her mother was a soul and R&B singer. Alexandra won the TV talent show *The X Factor* and now stars in West End musicals. She likes to spend weekends at home with her dogs and family.

Alexandra says: 'On Fridays I like to have my family to my house – my brothers, David and Aaron, my sister Sheniece, my mum and my dad. I always cook. I make Spaghetti Bolognese, my favourite food. I love it!

My three dogs, Alfie, Prince and Teddy, run around and there's reggae music because my dad's Jamaican. My dad lives near me. He's a chef and I want to learn how to make Jamaican food.

On Saturdays, I get up late – Alfie sleeps on my bed – then I take the dogs for a walk. I often spend the day with my nieces and nephews. We have a picnic lunch in the garden, or when it's nice and hot we go to the park.

As a Jamaican family we like to have chicken soup on Saturday night. Dad usually makes it.

On Sunday mornings, I often do a 'hot' yoga class near my house. Then we go to church. It's always very lively, with lots of singing and a band. After church we sometimes go to the pub for a roast dinner and then we go home and watch the football together as a family. My family support Arsenal, but I'm a Manchester United fan. In the evening, we sometimes drive into London and go to a club. The **Drury Club** in Covent Garden is great on a Sunday. It's got great music – my dad often comes, too.

There is never a day when I *don't* speak to my mum or my dad. I talk to my brothers and sister, too. I have a lot of great people around me. I'm very lucky.'





Speaking and listening

Your work-life balance

1 Read and complete the questionnaire about you. Write ✓ or ✗. Then look at the answer key. Do you have a good work-life balance?

2 Ask your teacher (T) the questions, then ask two students (S1, S2). Complete the questionnaire.

Do you like your work?

Yes, sometimes.

Yes, I do.

No, I don't.

3 Look at the key. Compare with other students. Who has a good work-life balance? Who lives to work?



4 3.8 Listen to Dr Susan Hall. She is an expert on the work-life balance. Answer the questions.

1 Why does she say that work is important?
2 Why is 'play' important?
3 What's the problem with taking work home?
4 What's her final advice?

Talking about you

Work with a partner.

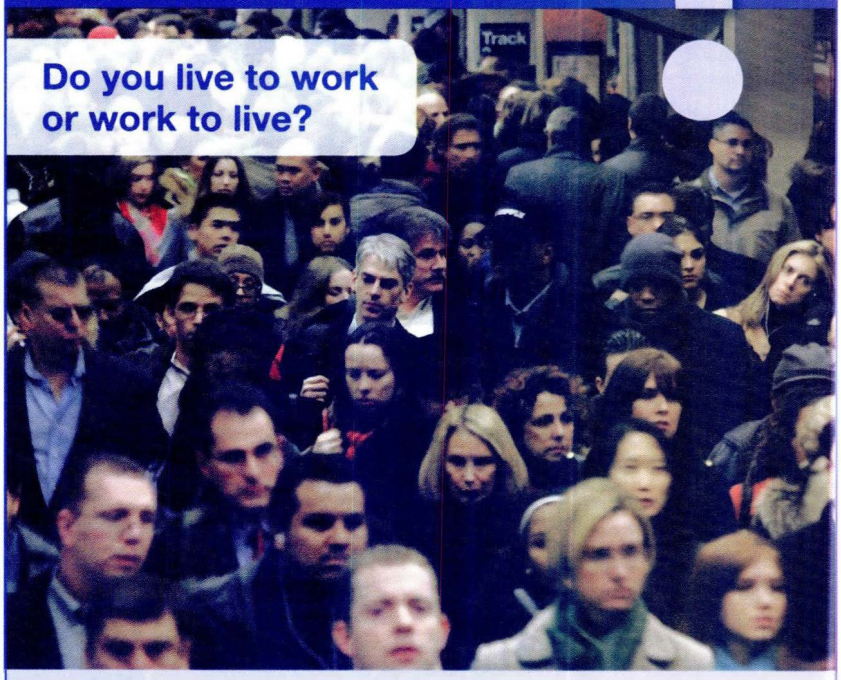
- How many people do you know who love their work?
- Do you know people who don't?
- 'If you like your job, you never have to work again.' Do you agree?

Go online to watch a video about how people with different jobs try to get the right work-life balance.



Questionnaire

Your work-life balance



Do you ... ?	Me	T	S1	S2
1 like your work	☐	☐	☐	☐
2 have many free time activities	☐	☐	☐	☐
3 spend a lot of time with family and friends	☐	☐	☐	☐
4 relax at weekends	☐	☐	☐	☐
5 have breakfast before you go to work	☐	☐	☐	☐
6 travel far to work	☐	☐	☐	☐
7 sometimes stay late at work	☐	☐	☐	☐
8 often bring work home	☐	☐	☐	☐
9 have trouble sleeping	☐	☐	☐	☐
10 think about work when you are at home	☐	☐	☐	☐

KEY

Answers 1–3	2 points for YES ✓	6–8 points = You have a good work-life balance.
Answers 4–5	1 point for YES ✓	3–5 points = Work-life balance is OK.
Answers 6–10	0 points for YES ✓	0–2 points = Not OK. You live to work.

Everyday English Social expressions

1 Look at the photos of Hakan, a student of English. Where is he? Who are the people he is with?

2 Read the first lines of the conversations in **A**. They are all from Hakan's day? Who says the lines? Is it … ?

- Hakan
- his host family
- his teacher
- another student

A
1 Bye! Have a nice day!
2 I'm sorry I'm late. The traffic's very bad this morning.
3 Can I sit next to you, Karina?
4 Is that a new shirt? It looks good!
5 What's the matter? Do you have a problem?
6 Please, can I open the window? It's really warm in here.
7 Can we have a break?
8 Can I have a large Americano, please?
9 Hi, Hakan. How was your day?

3 3.9 Read the second lines of the conversations in **B**. Match them with the first lines in **A**. Then listen and check.

B
6 Sure. Good idea. This room's really hot today.
__ Really good, thanks. Our teacher's great. And you?
__ Thanks. Glad you like it, but it's really old!
__ Thanks. Same to you. See you later.
__ OK, I think we all need one. But just fifteen minutes!
__ Never mind. Come and sit down.
__ Yes, what does 'bilingual' mean?
__ Yes, of course. I'll move my bag.
__ Is that to have here or take away?

4 Work with a partner. Practise some of the conversations. Try to continue them.

A Bye! Have a nice day!
B Thanks. Same to you. See you later.
A Right. About four o'clock?
B School doesn't finish 'til four.
A OK! About 4.30, then.

3.10 Listen and compare your conversations.

Go online for more **speaking** practice







Writing Form filling

An application form

1 Work with a partner. Read Lena's application form for a sports and leisure centre. Use the information to talk about Lena.

Her name's … She … married. She's … years old. She's … She … Her (email) address/phone number … She likes …

Fit & Well **Sports and Leisure Centre** APPLICATION FORM

Please write in BLOCK CAPITALS.

PERSONAL INFORMATION

First Name LENA
Surname PRENTICE
Title Mr/Mrs/Miss/Ms
Date of birth dd/mm/yy 02/07/91
Nationality SOUTH AFRICAN
Address 23A PARK ROAD
Town/City SHEFFIELD
Postcode (Zip Code) S1 4AX
Email address Len.pren@talktalk.com
Phone number 0770 900687

SPORTS

Please tick (✓) interests.

Swimming ☑ Badminton ☐
Indoor tennis ☐ Squash ☑
Outdoor tennis ☑

HEALTH & FITNESS

Gym ☑
Spa ☐
Exercise classes ☑

Signature Lena Prentice
Date dd/mm/yy 10/04/18



2 Fill in the same form for you. Compare your form with your partner's.

I like playing squash, but Thomas doesn't. We both like swimming.

Fit & Well **Sports and Leisure Centre** APPLICATION FORM

Please write in BLOCK CAPITALS.

PERSONAL INFORMATION

First Name _____
Surname _____
Title Mr/Mrs/Miss/Ms
Date of birth dd/mm/yy _____
Nationality _____
Address _____
Town/City _____
Postcode (Zip Code) _____
Email address _____
Phone number _____

SPORTS

Please tick (✓) interests.

Swimming ☐ Badminton ☐
Indoor tennis ☐ Squash ☐
Outdoor tennis ☐

HEALTH & FITNESS

Gym ☐
Spa ☐
Exercise classes ☐

Signature _____
Date dd/mm/yy _____



3 Discuss as a class which sports are popular.

Go online for more **writing** practice

House and home 4

- **Grammar** *some/any/a lot of; this/that/these/those*
- **Vocabulary** Adjectives
- **Everyday English** Numbers and prices
- **Reading** Inside the Houses of Parliament
- **Listening** Five conversations
- **Writing** Describing your home



1 Where is the house?
2 Do you like it? Why/Why not?

Watch the video introduction online

Use your **Workbook** for self study

Go online for more practice and to *Check your Progress*

Grammar *there is/are*

STARTER

1 Where can you find the words in the box: **living room, kitchen** or **bathroom**?

sofa	cooker	shower
fridge	towel	shelves
lamp	kettle	plates
mirror	armchair	toilet

2 4.1 Listen, check and repeat.

A flat to rent

1 4.2 **Emma** wants to find a new place to live. Listen and complete her conversation with her friend **Rachel**.

R Ooh, there's a flat to rent in Medway Road!

E Is it big?

R *There's* a big living room.

E Mmm!

R And *there are* two bedrooms.

E Great! What about the kitchen?

R _____ a new kitchen.

E Really? How many bathrooms _____?

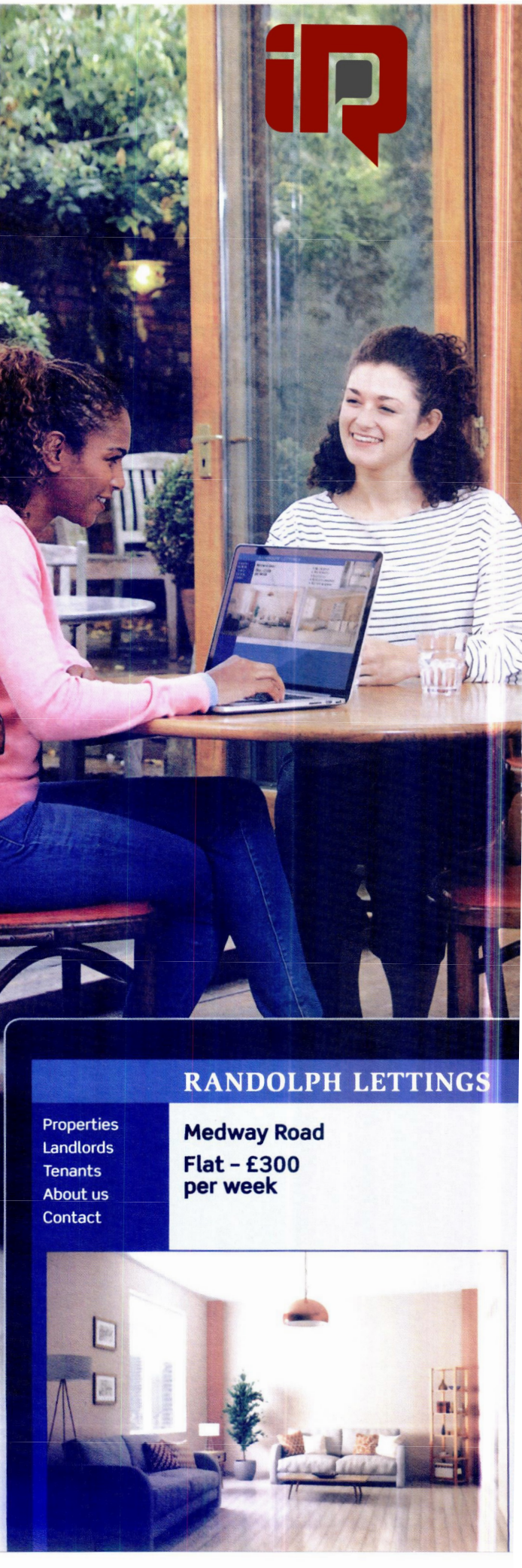
R Er, … _____ just one bathroom.

E _____ a garden?

R No, _____ a garden. But it's opposite the park.

E Oh, it doesn't matter, then. It sounds great!

2 Practise the conversation with a partner.



GRAMMAR SPOT

Complete the chart.

Positive	There *is* a shower. There _____ two bedrooms.
Negative	There _____ a garden. There _____ any bookshelves.
Questions and answers	'_____ _____ a dining room?' ' Yes, there is.' / 'No, there isn't.' 'How many bathrooms _____ _____?' 'There's one.' / 'There are two.'

Grammar reference 4.1–4.2 p144

3 Look at the photos of the flat. Describe the living room.

There's a big window. There are two ...

4 Ask and answer questions about the flat.

Is there ... ?
- a shower
- a fridge
- a dining room

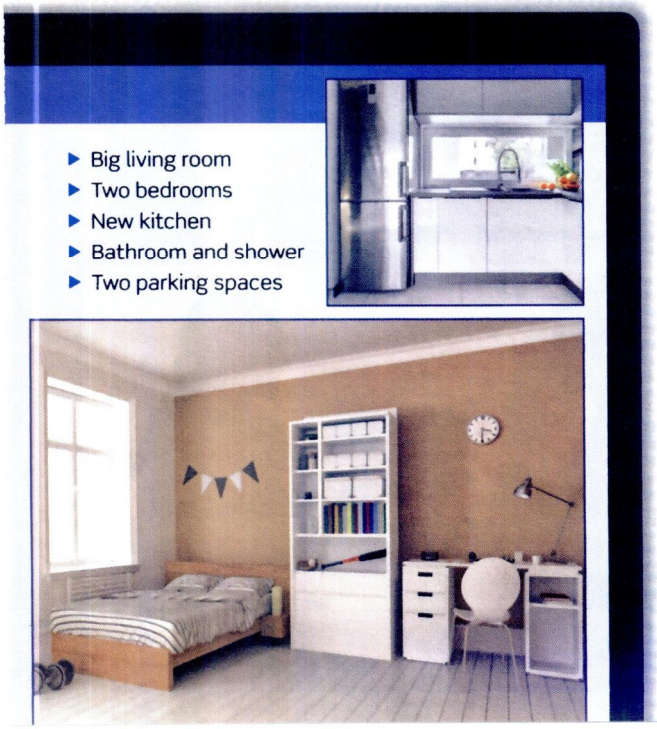
Is there a shower?

Yes, there is.

How many ... are there?
- bedrooms
- bathrooms
- parking spaces

Are there any ... ?
- carpets
- bookshelves
- curtains

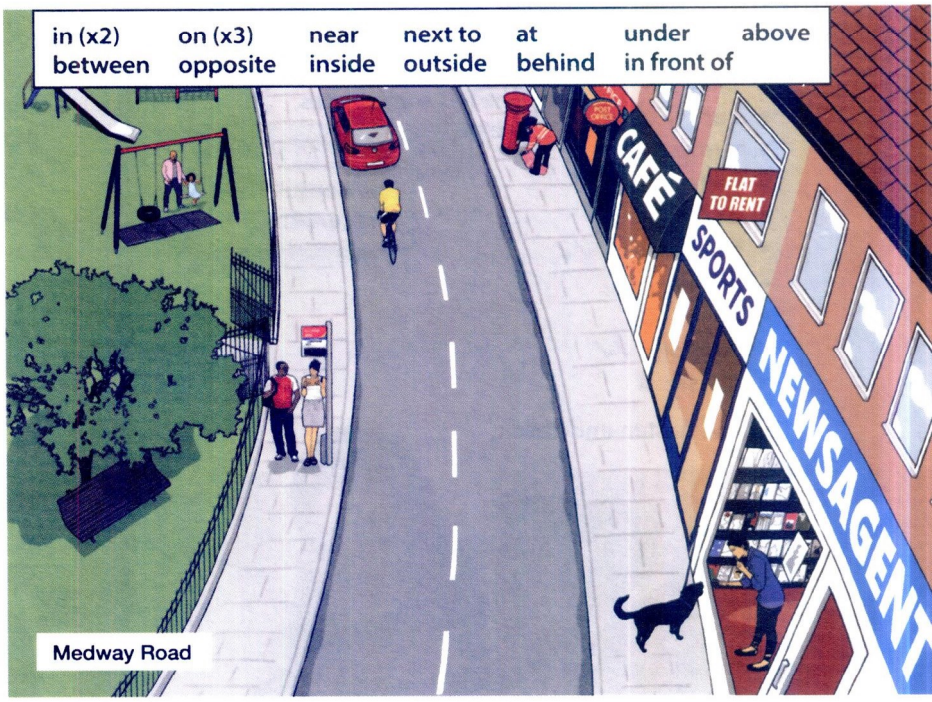
4.3 Listen and check.



Prepositions of place

5 Look at the picture. Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

in (x2) between | on (x3) opposite | near | inside | next to | outside | at | behind | under | in front of | above



1 The flat is *in* Medway Road, and it's *on* the first floor.

2 It's _____ a sports shop and it's _____ _____ a café. It's _____ the café and a newsagent's. There's a post office _____ the flat.

3 There's a dog _____ the newsagent's, and there's a woman _____ the newsagent's.

4 The park is _____ the flat.

5 There's a bus stop _____ _____ _____ the park gate. There are two people _____ the bus stop.

6 There's a bicycle _____ the road, _____ a car.

7 There's a playground _____ the park, and there's a girl _____ the swing.

8 There's a park bench _____ a tree.

4.4 Listen and check.

Practice

A nice place!

1 Work with a partner and exchange information about two flats.

Student A Look at the advert for a flat on p149.

Student B Look at the advert for a different flat on p152.

2 Draw a plan of your home. Show the plan and describe your home to your partner.

In my living room, there's a ...

The bathroom is next to ...

A new flat

some/any/a lot of

1 Emma is in her new flat. What does she have? What doesn't she have? Tell a partner.

- plates ✓✓
- cups ✓✓✓✓
- curtains ✗
- pictures ✓✓
- books ✓✓✓✓
- bookshelves ✓✓
- towels ✗
- lamps ✗
- cushions ✓✓
- glasses ✗

She has some plates.

She has a lot of cups.

She doesn't have any curtains.

4.5 Listen and check.



GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Match the pictures with the sentences.

She has ...

- ☐ two plates.
- ☐ some plates.
- ☐ a lot of plates.

A B C



2 When do we use *some*? When do we use *any*?

There **are some** cups.

There **aren't any** glasses.

Does she **have any** lamps?

Grammar reference 4.3–4.4 p144

this/that/these/those

2 Look at Emma's shopping list. What does she need?

3 Look at Emma and Rachel shopping. Complete the conversations.

Things to buy

curtains
cushions
a kettle
a picture
towels
glasses
a lamp

1



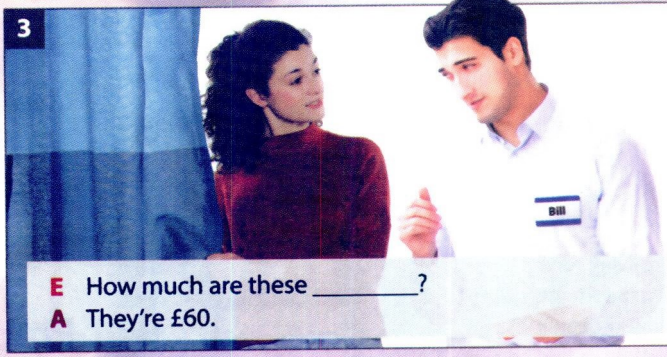
E How much is this _____, please?
A It's £25.

2



E I love that _____!
R Yes, it's lovely!

3



E How much are these _____?
A They're £60.

4



E I like those _____!
R Yes, they are nice!

5



E Look at those _____!
R They're fabulous!

6



E Do you like _____ _____?
R Yeah! It's a nice colour!

7



E How much are _____ _____!
A £4 each.

8



E Look at _____ _____!
R You don't need any more handbags!

4.6 Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

GRAMMAR SPOT

Singular	this	that
Plural	these	those

We use *this* and *these* for things **near** to us.
We use *that* and *those* for things **further away.**

Grammar reference 4.5 p144

Practice

In our classroom

1 Complete the sentences with *a*, *some*, or *any*.

1 I have *a* dictionary and *some* books on my desk.
2 There aren't _____ Swedish students in our class.
3 Is there _____ homework tonight?
4 Is there _____ test this week?
5 I need _____ help with this exercise.
6 There are _____ difficult exercises in this book, but we have _____ very good teacher.

2 Make sentences about your classroom.
Point to the things and tell your class.

There are some chairs. There aren't any pictures.
These are my books. That's Sandra's bag.

What's in your bag?

3 4.7 Listen to Zoe. Tick (✓) the things she has in her bag.

☐ a phone	☐ keys	☐ a dictionary
☐ a diary	☐ stamps	☐ credit cards
☐ a purse	☐ water	☐ pens
☐ an address book	☐ money	☐ sunglasses

4 What does she have? What doesn't she have?

She has a phone and some pens. She doesn't have a dictionary and she doesn't have any …

5 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about what's in your bag.

Do you have a wallet? Yes, I do.
Is there a pen? Yes, of course!



Check it

6 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

1 ☐ Here are some photos of my children.
☐ Here are any photos of my children.

2 ☐ I have a lot of books.
☐ I have a lot books.

3 ☐ This is my bag here.
☐ This is my bag there.

4 ☐ I don't have some money.
☐ I don't have any money.

5 ☐ Look at these people over there in the park.
☐ Look at those people over there in the park.

Go online for more **grammar** practice

Reading and speaking

Inside the Houses of Parliament

1 Read the introduction to *The Houses of Parliament*. What can you see in the photos?

2 Do you think these sentences about it are true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false ones.

1 There's a tower called Big Ben.
2 There's a gym and a post office inside.
3 It's in a palace that was built for a king.
4 The MPs sit on red benches.
5 There aren't places for all the MPs to sit.
6 The King or Queen can never enter the House of Commons chamber.
7 The King or Queen can sleep in the Houses of Parliament.
8 There are no apartments inside.

3 Read the text and check.

4 Answer the questions.

1 Why is Westminster called 'the mother of all parliaments'?
2 Who is the Speaker?
3 Where does he sit?
4 Why is there 2.5 metres between the red lines on the floor?
5 Where does the Speaker live?
6 What's under his chair?

5 Find the numbers in the text. What are they about?

2 – There are two dining rooms.

~~2~~	650	427	1,100	100	2.5	4

Language work

6 Ask and answer questions about the Houses of Parliament.

- a gym
- a cinema
- a pub
- many staircases
- many rooms
- any tennis courts
- places to sit for 650 MPs
- apartments
- any dining rooms

Is there a gym? Yes, there is.

Are there many staircases? Yes, there are a lot.



The Houses of Parliament

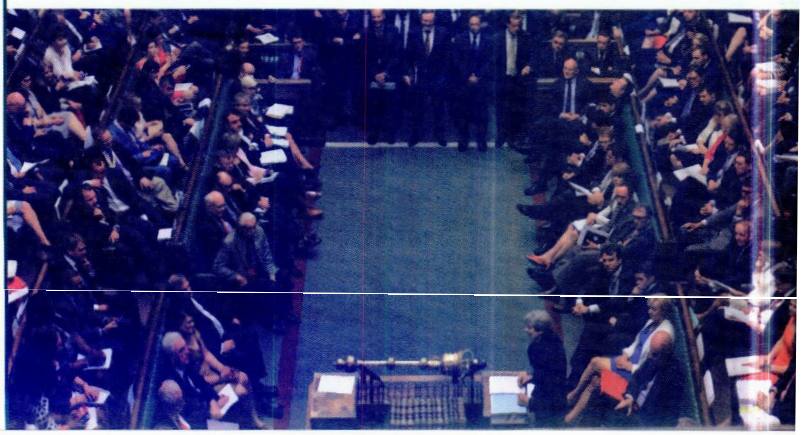
The British Parliament is often called 'the mother of all parliaments', because it was the first in the world. There are two houses, the House of Lords, and the House of Commons. The politicians who work in the House of Commons are called Members of Parliament (MPs).

The Palace of Westminster

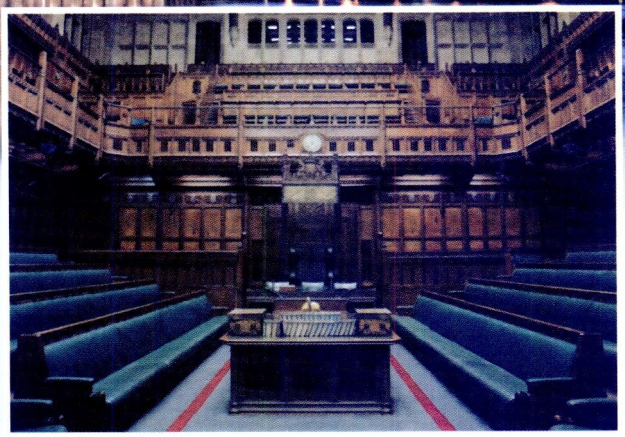
The Houses of Parliament are in the Palace of Westminster. It's most famous for Big Ben (this is the name of the bell inside the clock, not the name of the tower). The palace was first built for King Edward the Confessor in 1050 and now has more than 1,100 rooms on four floors, and over 100 staircases. There is also a hairdresser's, a pub, a gym and a post office.

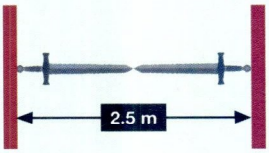
The House of Commons

In the big chamber* here, the MPs sit on green benches. The government MPs sit on one side, and the other MPs opposite. The leader of the House is called the Speaker, and he has a special chair in the middle. There are 650 MPs, but only 427 places to sit, so on busy days over 200 MPs stand, sometimes for hours.









In front of the green benches there are two red lines, with 2.5 metres between them – the length of two swords. MPs can't cross these lines, so they can only fight with words! The King or Queen can never enter the chamber of the House of Commons, only the House of Lords.

Speaker's House

The Speaker is the only person who lives in Westminster Palace, in Speaker's House. This is under Big Ben. Downstairs there's a living room, and two big dining rooms, and an amazing bed the King or Queen can sleep in! They never do! Upstairs there's a modern apartment, with four bedrooms.



Interesting note

Not many people know this, but under the Speaker's Chair in the House of Commons there is a toilet! It has curtains that you can pull around it! In the past, it was there for the Speaker when the business of the day was very long. Of course, the Speaker doesn't use it today!

*chamber – old-fashioned word for room

7 Match **Verbs** and **Places** from the text. Work with a partner. Make sentences.

You drink in a pub.

Verb	Place
drink	office
sleep	gym
sit	pub
eat	house
work	toilet
exercise	bench
live	dining room
use	bedroom

4.8 Listen and check.

Project

Research a famous building in your country. Write sentences about it.

- Where is it?
- Is it a government building? A church or cathedral? A museum?

Tell the other students.

Go online to **watch** a video about some unusual holiday homes



Vocabulary and listening

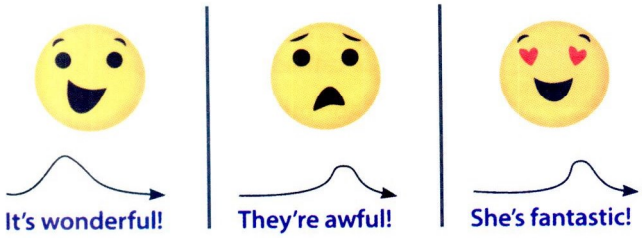
Adjectives for *good* and *bad*

1 There are lots of different words for *good* and *bad*. Write the words in the chart.

~~excellent~~ amazing lovely terrible great fabulous wonderful horrible awful fantastic dreadful

good	bad
excellent	

2 4.9 Listen to the intonation.



4.9 Listen again and repeat. Practise the other adjectives in **1**.

3 4.10 Listen to five conversations. Match the things people talk about with the adjectives.

1 Jerry's new flat	great, amazing
2 the weather	awful, horrible
3 a meal / the wine	fantastic, fabulous
4 new shoes	lovely, wonderful
5 a new teacher / tests	horrible, terrible

Look at 4.10 on p132 and practise the conversations.

4 Work with a partner. Continue the conversations.

1 'The weather's lovely today, isn't it?'
'Yes, it's wonderful.'
2 'It's a great party, isn't it?
3 'Do you like Phillipe?
4 'How's your meal?'
5 'Do you like my new flat?'

Adverb + adjective

5 We can use adverbs to make an adjective strong or not strong. Underline the adverbs in the examples.



6 4.11 Listen to four conversations. Who/What are the people talking about? Write the adverb + adjective they use.

Who/What?	adverb + adjective
1 *new jeans*	*really nice* , _____
2 _____	_____ , _____
3 _____	_____ , _____ , _____
4 _____	_____ , _____ , _____

Practise the conversations.

Talking about you

7 Work with a partner. Have conversations, starting with the words in the boxes.

town	house	flat
school	weather	job

old	big	interesting
nice	good	

Is your town old?

Well, there are some parts that are really old, but there are a lot of very modern …

Go online for more **vocabulary** practice

Everyday English

Numbers

1 Look at the pictures. Say the numbers.



2 Say these numbers.

8	10	12	15
20	32	45	60
76	99	187	250
700	1,000	1,300	1,000,000

4.12 Listen and check. Work in pairs. Point to the numbers and practise saying them.

3 How do we say these numbers in English?

1½ 2¼ 6.8 17.5 07861 56678

4.13 Listen and check. Practise the numbers.

4 4.14 Listen and write the numbers you hear.

1 32 _____, _____, _____
2 _____, _____
3 _____, _____
4 _____, _____
5 _____

Prices

5 Say the prices.



6 4.15 Listen and write the prices and numbers you hear. Check with a partner.

1 _____ 3 _____ 5 _____ 7 _____
2 _____ 4 _____ 6 _____ 8 _____

7 Work with a partner. One of you works in a shop, the other is a customer. Have conversations.

A: Excuse me, how much are these pencils?

B: They're £4.80. They're very good quality.

A: £4.80 for a pencil! That's much too expensive. No, thanks.

8 Write numbers and prices from your everyday life. Read them to your partner. Can you guess what they are?

375

Is that your address? That's right. 375 Hilltop Road.

€3.50

Is that how much you pay for a coffee? No, it's my bus fare to work.

Go online for more **speaking** practice

Writing Describing your home

Linking words (1): *and, so, but, because*

1 Match **A**, **B** and **C** to make four sentences.

A	B	C
I love my new flat	**and**	I like your flat, too.
	so	it's very beautiful.
I love my new flat,	**but**	please come and see it soon.
	because	unfortunately there isn't a garden.

Which of the linking words usually have a comma (,) before them?

2 Make sentences about where you live using the linking words.

I like my house because …
I love my flat, but …
I don't like my room, so …

3 Complete the sentences with *and*, *so*, *but*, or *because*.

1 Our flat's really small, *but* it's comfortable.
2 The rent is cheap _____ it's above a clothes shop.
3 We like living here _____ it's opposite the park.
4 We don't have a garden, _____ we have a small balcony.
5 Our best friends live in the next street, _____ we often see them.
6 There's a lot to do _____ a lot to see in our town.
7 My wife and I like sailing, _____ it's important for us to live near the sea.
8 We don't have a TV in my bedroom _____ we don't want one.

4 Read about Lisa's new flat. Choose the correct linking words.

5 4.16 Listen and check.

6 Write some notes about where you live.

- Where is it?
- Is it old or new?
- How many rooms are there?
- Is there a garden?
- Who do you live with?
- Do you like it? Why?

Talk to a partner about your notes.

7 Write a description of your home. Use linking words to join ideas. Read it aloud to the class.



My new flat

My new flat is near the centre of town, [1] *but / so* I often walk to work. It's not very big, [2] *but / because* it's very comfortable! There's just one bedroom, a living room, [3] *because / and* quite a big kitchen with a table in the centre. That's good [4] *because / so* I love cooking [5] *because / and* I can invite my friends to dinner. The living room has one big window. It faces south, [6] *but / so* it's always very sunny. I have two comfortable, old armchairs, [7] *but / so* I don't have a sofa [8] *because / and* the room is quite small.

There isn't a garden [9] *because / but* there's a small balcony. I want to put a chair there, [10] *and / so* I can sit in the sun on summer evenings.

I love my new flat for many reasons – the big kitchen, and the sunny living room – [11] *but / so* most of all, I love it [12] *and / because* it's my first home!

Go online for more **writing** practice

Super U! 5

- Gr • Grammar *can/can't, was/were, could*
- Voc • Vocabulary **Words that go together**
- Ev• • Everyday English **Polite requests**
- Reading **A talented family**
- Listening **Great talents**
- Writing **A formal email**



1 What is the sport?
2 Is she good at it?

irlanguage

Watch the video introduction online

Use your **Workbook** for self study

Go online for more practice and to *Check your Progress*

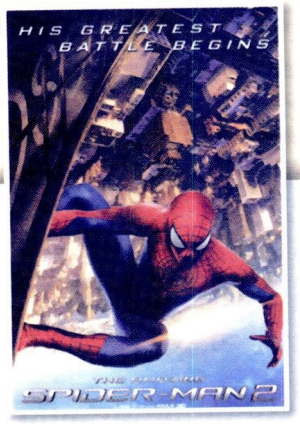
STARTER

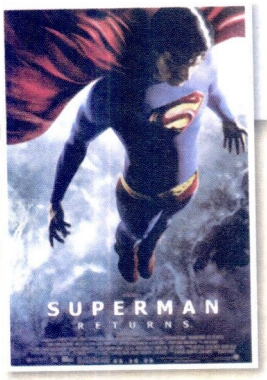
Grammar *can/can't*

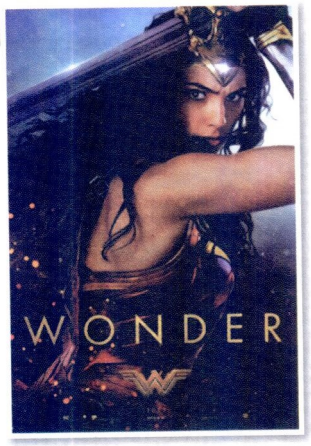
1 Do you know the superheroes in the posters? What can they do? Discuss the questions.

Who … ?

- can fly
- can't fly
- can run very fast
- can speak every language
- can climb buildings
- can jump very high
- can read people's minds
- can talk to animals







2 5.1 Listen and compare.

Ben's favourite superheroes

1 5.2 **Kate** has a present for her husband, **Ben's**, birthday. Listen and complete the first part of their conversation.

Kate Happy Birthday, Ben!!

Ben Wow! Thanks! My two favourite superheroes!

Kate Hmmm! So, what _____ they do, these superheroes?

Ben Well, Superman _____ _____ everything! He _____ _____ every language in the world and he _____ _____ at the speed of light.

Kate Surely *all* superheroes can fly?

Ben Batman can't. He's Batman, but he _____ _____.

Kate Really? Well, I'm pleased you like the present. Thirty-two years old today … and still a boy at heart! You can play with my six-year-old nephew!



2 5.3 Listen to the rest of the conversation. Who is Dexter? What can he do?

3 Complete the sentences from the conversation with *can* or *can't* + verb.

1 Dex *can do* a lot of things you *can't do*?
2 He _____ _____ Spanish fluently.
3 You _____ _____ any foreign languages at all!
4 I _____ _____ *bonjour* and *merci*!
5 He _____ _____ the guitar and he _____ _____ brilliantly.
6 There's nothing young Dexter _____ _____. He's 'Super Boy'!

5.3 Listen again and check. Practise the sentences with a partner.

GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION

1 Say all persons of *can* and *can't*. What do you notice?
I can, you can, he …, she …, it …, we …, they …
I can't, you can't, he …, she …, it …, we …, they …

2 5.4 Listen and repeat these sentences.
I can speak French. = /kən/
Can you speak French? = /kən/
Yes, I can. = /kæn/ No, I can't. = /kɑ:nt/

3 Say these sentences.
● ● ● ● ● ●
You can sing. I can't sing.

Grammar reference 5.1 p145

4 5.5 Listen and underline what you hear.

1 He *can* / *can't* play the guitar.
2 I *can* / *can't* hear you.
3 She *can* / *can't* speak French *and* / *or* German.
4 They *can* / *can't* meet us *at* / *until* 6.30.
5 You *can* / *can't* always get what you want.
6 *Can* / *Can't* you do the homework?

With your partner, take turns saying the sentences.

Practice

Ben can't speak Spanish. Can you?

1 5.6 Listen to Ben and Dexter. Complete the chart about them. Put (✓) or (✗).

Can … ?	Ben	Dexter	Partner
speak Spanish	✗	✓	
run fast			
ski			
play a musical instrument			
sing			
ride a bike			
cook			

2 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about Ben and Dexter.

Can Ben … ? Can Dexter … ? Yes, he can./No, he can't.

3 5.6 Listen again and complete the sentences about Ben and Dexter with words from the box.

~~a (little) bit~~	quite well	really well (x2)
fluently	(not) at all (x2)	brilliantly

1 Ben can speak French *a little bit*.
2 Dexter can speak Spanish _____.
3 Ben can ski _____.
4 Dexter can't ski _____.
5 Dexter can play the guitar _____.
6 He can sing _____, too.
7 Ben can't sing _____.
8 Dexter's mum can cook _____.

Talking about you

4 Ask and answer questions to complete the chart in exercise 1 about your partner.

Can you speak Spanish? No, I can't, but I can speak English and French quite well.

5 Tell the class about you and your partner.

Jose can't speak Spanish at all, but I can speak it a bit.

Today and yesterday

1 5.7


Flatiron Building, NYC, today

PRESENT		PAST
What day is it today? It's _____.	1	**What day was it yesterday?** It was _____.
What month is it now? It's _____.	2	**What month was it last month?** It was _____.
Is it sunny today? _____, it is./_____, it isn't.	3	**Was it sunny yesterday?** _____, it was./_____, it wasn't.
Where are you now? I'm in/at _____.	4	**Where were you yesterday?** I was in/at _____.
Where are your parents now? They're in/at _____.	5	**Where were your parents yesterday?** They were in/at _____.
Are you in New York now? _____, I am./_____, I'm not.	6	**Were you in New York last year?** _____, I was./_____, I wasn't.
Can you play the guitar? _____, I can./_____, I can't.	7	**Could you play the guitar when you were ten?** _____, I could./_____, I couldn't.
Can your teacher speak a lot of languages? Yes, _____ _____./No, _____ _____.	8	**Could your teacher speak English when he/she was seven?** Yes, _____ could./No, _____ couldn't.


Flatiron Building, NYC, in 1916

2 Ask and answer the past questions in exercise 1 with a partner.

What day was it yesterday? It was ...

3 Complete the sentences with the past of the verb *to be* and *can*.

1 I *wasn't* at school yesterday because I _____ ill.
2 My parents _____ at work last week because they _____ on holiday in Spain.
3 Where _____ you last night? You _____ at the party.
4 I _____ read and write when I _____ just five years old.
5 My sister _____ ride a bike until she _____ seven.

GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION

1 Complete the chart of the **Past Simple** of *to be*.

	Positive	Negative
I	*was*	*wasn't*
You	*were*	*weren't*
He/She/It		
We	*were*	
They		

2 5.8 Listen and repeat the sentences.

3 What is the past of *can*?

	Positive	Negative
I/You/ He/She/It/ We/They		

Grammar reference 5.2–5.3 p145

Practice

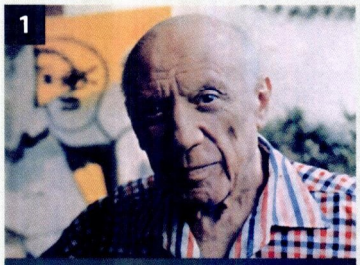
1 Talk to a partner. Do you know the people in the photos?

Who is/was … a scientist? an artist? a tennis player? a singer/songwriter?

Picasso was an artist.

Marie Curie was …

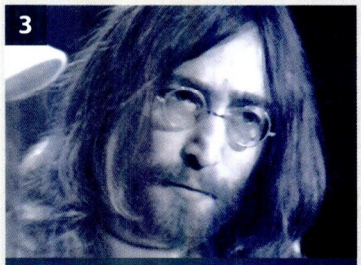
GREAT TALENTS!



1 Pablo Picasso (1881–1973)



2 Marie Curie (1867–1934)



3 John Lennon (1940–1980)



4 Serena Williams (1981–)

2 With your partner look at the following information and make sentences about the people.

1 **Picasso** / born / October 25, 1881 / Malaga, Spain. / draw / just two.

Pablo Picasso was an artist. He was born on October 25th, 1881 in Malaga, Spain.

He could draw when he was just two.

2 **Marie Curie** / born / November 7, 1867 / Warsaw, Poland. / read / four.

3 **John Lennon** / born / October 9, 1940 / Liverpool, England. / play / banjo and guitar / eleven.

4 **Serena Williams** / born/ September 26, 1981 / Michigan, America. / play tennis / just three.

5.9 Listen and check. What extra information do you hear?

3 Ask and answer questions about the people.

When/where/born? How old/when/could … ?

When and where was Picasso born?

He was born …

Talking about you

4 Work in groups. Ask and answer the questions.

1 When/born?
2 Where/born?
3 Where/parents born?
4 How old were you when you could … ?
- walk
- talk
- ride a bike
- read
- swim
- speak a foreign language

Ben's birthday party

5 Complete **Eva** and **Marcus'** conversation about **Ben's** birthday party with *was*, *were*, *wasn't*, *weren't*, or *couldn't*.

COME TO BEN'S BIRTHDAY PARTY,
at Retro Bar on the High Street, 7pm til late. Food and drinks provided.

E [1] *Were* you at Ben's birthday party?

M Yes, I [2]_____. But why [3]_____ you there?

E Oh, I [4]_____ come.

M Why?

E Well, I [5]_____ very well. I [6]_____ in bed with flu.

M Oh, you poor thing! It [7]_____ a fantastic party – nice people, good food, and great music.

E Hmm – I'm sure it [8]_____ amazing. Ben and Kate always have good parties. [9]_____ there many people there?

M Yeah, everyone [10]_____ there, all the gang. It's such a shame that you [11]_____ be with us. Are you better now?

E Mmm … I'm OK. I'm back at work, but I'm still not great.

5.10 Listen and check. Practise the conversation with a partner.

6 Ask and answer these questions with a partner.

Where were you … ?
- at 8.00 this morning
  I was at home/in bed/at work/on the bus …
- at this time yesterday
- at 10.00 last night
- last Saturday evening
- last Sunday morning

Go online for more **grammar** practice

Reading and speaking

A talented family

1 Do you have any talented people in your family? What can they do?

2 Look at the photos of the Kanneh-Mason family and read the introduction.

1 How many children are there in the family? How many boys? How many girls?
2 What musical instruments can you see?
3 Why were 2015 and 2018 special for them?
4 Why does their mother say that they are successful?

3 5.11 Read and listen about the family. *All* these statements are incorrect. Correct them.

1 Sheku was BBC Young Musician of the Year in 2018.
It wasn't 2018, it was 2016.
2 Sheku couldn't play the cello until he was twelve.
3 The younger sisters can't play any musical instruments.
4 Isata and Braimah can both play the piano.
5 Sheku and his sisters get up at 4.30 a.m. every day to go to school.
6 Their parents, Stuart and Kadie, were born in England.
7 Kadie plays the cello, but Stuart can't play any musical instrument.
8 The children never practise more than two hours a day.
9 The family often go shopping for new clothes.
10 The children worry because it isn't 'cool' to play a musical instrument.

Vocabulary

Who or what do these adjectives from the text refer to?
All the children are talented.

~~talented~~	brilliant	full-time	successful
normal	rich	expensive	old
proud	'cool'		

What do you think?

Work as a class. Discuss the questions.

- Are the Kanneh-Masons a happy family? Why/Why not?
- Are the parents good parents? Why/Why not?
- Do you think the children have many friends? Why/Why not?
- Are the children close to their brothers and sisters?
- What about your family? Who are you close to? Why?

Go online to watch a video about and learn about a school for talented young musicians.

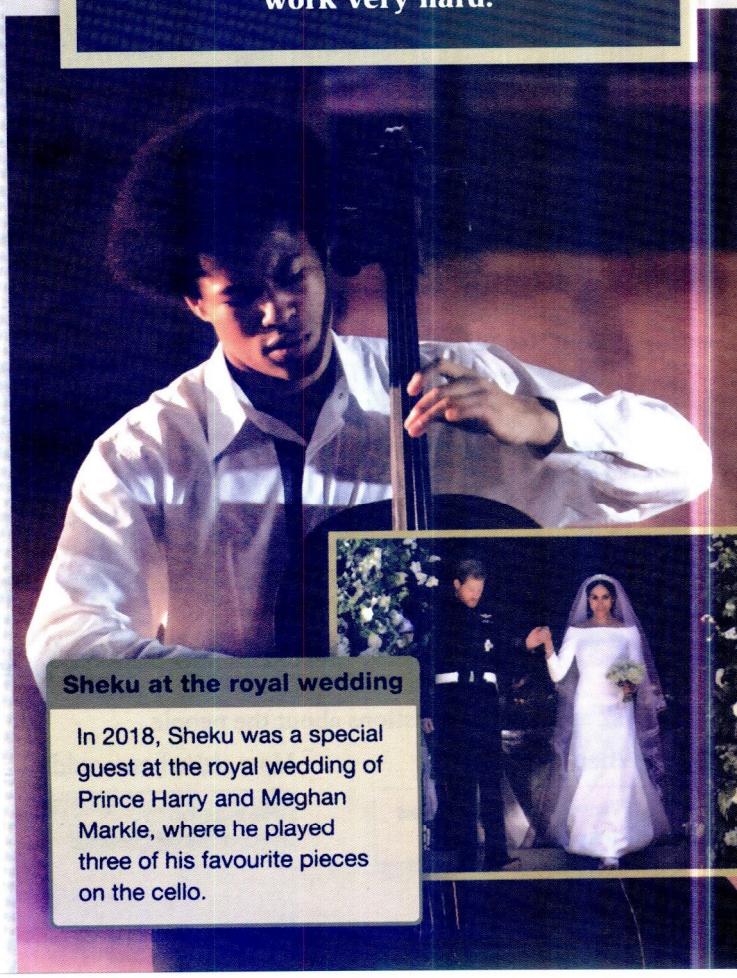


THE KANNEH-MASONS

Is this the most talented family in Britain?

This was the question asked by the TV and music producer, Simon Cowell, when six of the seven brothers and sisters were on the TV show 'Britain's Got Talent' in 2015.

The children are often called 'prodigies', but their mother doesn't like this. She knows they are talented musicians, but says that they are successful because they work very hard.

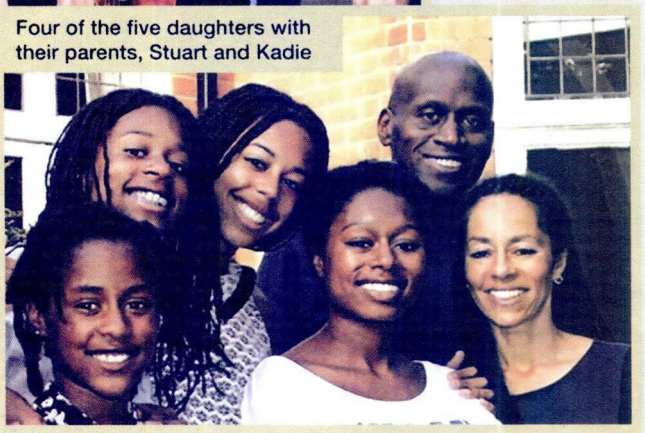


Sheku at the royal wedding

In 2018, Sheku was a special guest at the royal wedding of Prince Harry and Meghan Markle, where he played three of his favourite pieces on the cello.



Konya, Aminata, Isata, Jeneba, Sheku, Braimah

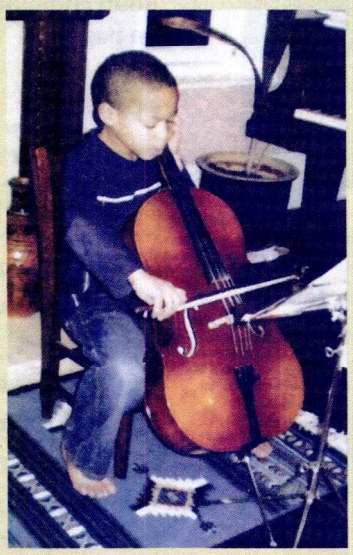


Four of the five daughters with their parents, Stuart and Kadie

In 2016, **Sheku**, one of the two brothers and a brilliant cellist, was the *BBC Young Musician of the Year*. He was just 17 years old. His sister **Isata**, 19, was also a finalist in the BBC competition in 2014. She is a pianist and a violinist. But, amazingly, they are not the only talented musicians in the family. Their brother **Braimah**, 18, and sisters, **Konya**, 15, **Jeneba**, 13, **Aminata**, 10, and little **Mariatu**, 6, can all play musical instruments really well.

Isata and Braimah are full-time students at the Royal Academy of Music in London. Isata has a scholarship from the singer/songwriter **Elton John**. She plays the piano, violin and viola. Braimah plays the violin. Next is Sheku. He could play the cello when he was six and now attends the junior school of the Royal Academy. He gets up at 4.30 a.m. every Saturday and goes by train to London. His sisters go with him.

The family live in Nottingham, England. Mother, **Kadie**, is from Sierra Leone, West Africa, and the father, **Stuart**, comes from Antigua, in the Caribbean. They are both very musical – Stuart plays the cello and Kadie the clarinet, so you could always hear some music in their home. But they say that their children's amazing musical talent is still a shock to them and they now have an orchestra in their house. Isata, the eldest, was the first to start playing (the piano), and so when the others were born it was normal to hear music in their house. Their home has four pianos, three cellos, four violins, and a viola, and the children practise for two hours a day, sometimes more.



Sheku Kanneh-Mason, age 6

The family aren't rich. Money is always a worry. Instruments are very expensive – one cello string costs £80! Their car is very old and they never buy new clothes or go on holiday. But the parents are very proud of their children. Their father, Stuart, says, 'A lot of teenage boys, especially, feel it isn't 'cool' to play an instrument.' He's really pleased that his children don't think that.



Vocabulary and listening

Words that go together

Noun + noun

1 Match a noun in **A** to a noun in **B**. Do we write one word or two?

A	B
motor (x2)	room
bus (x2)	woman
business	stop
sun	station
coffee	park
living	bike
hand	lights
railway	way
car	glasses
traffic	shop
	bag

2 Test the other students.

You ride this, but it's not a horse or a bicycle.

A motorbike!



3 5.12 Listen to three conversations. What **noun** + **nouns** can you hear?

Verb + noun

4 Match a verb in **A** to a noun in **B**.

A	B
go (x2)	a motorbike
speak	your health
ride	on holiday
play	the violin
earn	a shirt and tie
live	films online
send	a foreign language
wear	by train
look after	on the third floor
watch	a lot of money
	a lot of text messages

5 Ask and answer questions with a partner.

Where do you usually go on holiday?

We like going to the seaside.

Can you speak any foreign languages!

Yes, but not fluently!

6 5.13 Listen to six short conversations. Which verb + noun combinations do you hear? Practise the conversations on page 134.

Prepositions

7 Complete the sentences with a preposition from the box.

about of to (x2) from on at with ~~for~~

1 What do you want *for* your birthday?
2 Where's your girlfriend _____? Is she Mexican?
3 What sort _____ music do you like?
4 What are you worried _____?
5 Is Paula married _____ Mike?
6 Do you want to come shopping _____ me?
7 Were you _____ holiday last week? I couldn't contact you.
8 Can I speak _____ Dave? Is he _____ work today?

5.14 Listen and check. What are the answers? Practise the conversations.

Go online for more **vocabulary** practice

Everyday English Polite requests

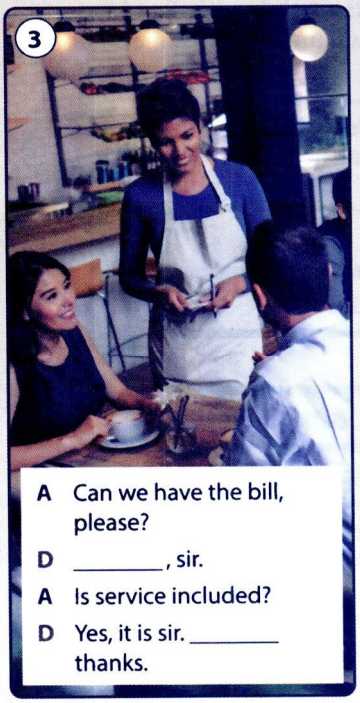
1 5.15 Listen and complete the conversations. Where are the people?



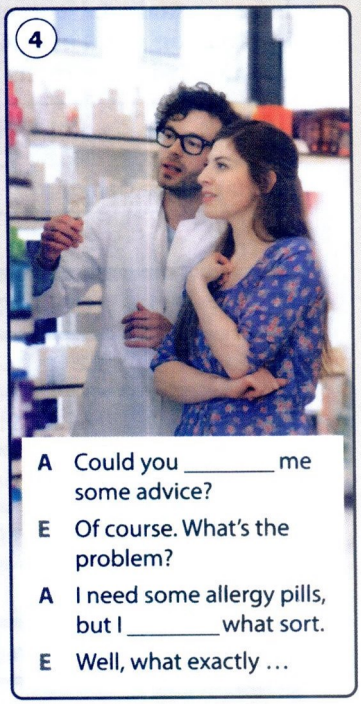
A Can I _____ an espresso, and a medium latte, please?
B Yes, _____. To go or have here?
A To go. Thanks.



A Could you _____ the door for me, please?
C Sure. No _____.
A Thanks. That's very _____.



A Can we have the bill, please?
D _____, sir.
A Is service included?
D Yes, it is sir. _____ thanks.

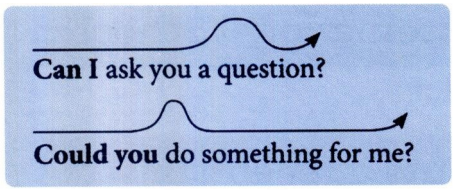


A Could you _____ me some advice?
E Of course. What's the problem?
A I need some allergy pills, but I _____ what sort.
E Well, what exactly …

2 How does **A** ask for things? Which is more polite, *Can …?* or *Could …?*

Pronunciation

3 5.16 *Can/Could I …? Can/Could you…?* express a request. Listen and repeat. Notice how the intonation falls and rises.



4 5.15 Listen again to the conversations in **1**. Practise them with a partner.

5 Complete the requests with *Can/Could I … ?* or *Can/Could you … ?*

1 *Can I* have a cheese sandwich, please?
2 _____ post this letter for me, please?
3 _____ give me your email address?
4 _____ speak to you for a moment?
5 _____ lend me £20 till tomorrow?
6 _____ give me a hand with this box?

5.17 Listen and compare. Can you remember the replies? Practise with a partner.

6 Have more conversations with some of these prompts.



Can I have a glass of water, please?
Of course. Sparkling or still? Ice and lemon?
Sparkling and just ice, please.
Here you are.

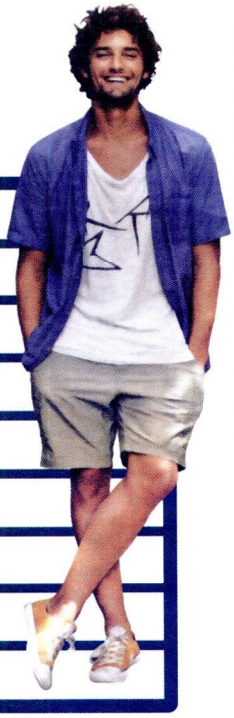
Go online for more **speaking** practice

Writing A formal email

Applying for a job

1 Luke is a student. He wants a holiday job. Read the information about him. Ask and answer some questions with a partner.

What's ... ?	How old ... ?
What was ... ?	Can he ... ?
What ... like doing?	



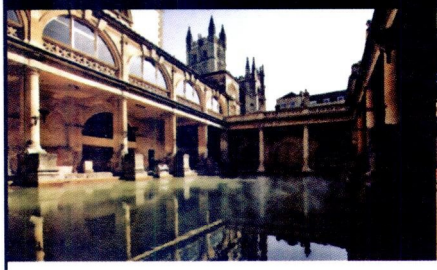
Name	LUKE HARRISON
Age	22
Address	17 Park St, Bath, BA2 4EE
Email	luke.har6@yoohoo.com
Phone	07557 888453
Present job	Student
Last job	Ski instructor in Austria
Languages	French, German
Interests	Skiing, travel, guitar

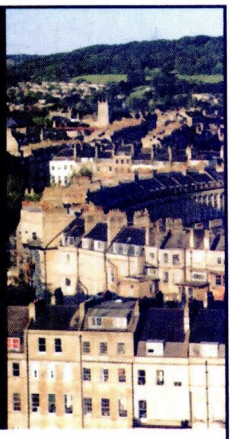
2 Read the advertisement for tourist guides. Why do you think Luke is interested in this job?

The beautiful and ancient

CITY OF BATH

wants TOURIST GUIDES





- Are you over 18?
- Do you like talking to people?
- Do you know Bath well?
- Can you speak any foreign languages?
- Are you free from July to September?

Write or email: Linda Yates, Bath Tourist Centre, 2 Abbey Street, Bath, BA1 5LY
lyates@cometobath.com

3 Read and complete Luke's email applying for the job.

Subject: Job as tourist guide
From: luke.har6@yoohoo.com
To: 'Linda Yates' <lyates@cometobath.com>

Dear Ms Yates,

I am interested in the job of [1]_____. I am [2]_____ years old and I [3]_____ in Bath. I am a [4]_____ at Durham University, so I am [5]_____ from mid-June until the end of September.

Last winter I was a [6]_____ in a holiday resort in Austria. I [7]_____ speak two [8]_____ quite well, French and German, and I [9]_____ working with people very much. I [10]_____ born in Bath, so I know the city very well indeed.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,
Luke Harrison

4 Read this advertisement for a job. What is the job? Answer the questions about you (write the name of your town). Write a similar email to Luke's.

The International School in

(your town)

wants a receptionist.

- Do you like working with people?
- Can you speak two languages, and English?
- Do you have experience working in an office?
- Can you use a computer?
- Do you know your town very well?

Email Anne Watson, Director, at
awatson@international.school.com

5 Compare your email with your partner's.

Go online for more **writing** practice

Lessons in life 6

- **Grammar** Past Simple (1) – regular and irregular verbs
- **Vocabulary** *-ed/-ing* adjectives
- **Everyday English** What's the date?
- **Reading** The meaning of life?
- **Listening** The year I was born
- **Writing** A biography



1 Where are the boys?
2 What lesson is it?

Watch the video introduction online

Use your **Workbook** for self study

Go online for more practice and to *Check your Progress*

Grammar

Past Simple (1) – regular verbs

STARTER

What do you know about your grandparents and great-grandparents?

- When and where were they born?
- What were their jobs?
- Were they rich or poor?

I think my great-grandfather was a soldier.

He was born about 1930 in …

The story of Madame Tussauds

1 Look at the photos and read the title. Do you know anything about Madame Tussauds?

2 6.1 Read and listen to text **A**. Complete it with the verbs you hear. Answer the questions.

1 Why is it surprising that the museum is still very popular?
2 What do people want to do with the models?
3 How long does it take to make a model? How much does it cost?

3 6.2 Read and listen to text **B** about Madame Tussaud. Answer the questions.

1 Where and when was she born?
2 Who was Philippe Curtius? What could he do?
3 Were Marie and her mother in Paris in 1766?
4 Why was Marie frightened?

GRAMMAR SPOT

The highlighted verbs in text **B** are all in the **Past Simple** tense.

How is this formed?

What are the last two letters?

I/You/He/She/We/They worked in Paris for many years.

The form is the same in all persons.

Grammar reference 6.1 p145

Madame Tussauds

A The museum today

Madame Tussauds waxworks museum [1] *is* one of London's most popular tourist attractions. You often [2]_____ long queues of people waiting to visit their favourite lifelike stars, from Star Wars characters and the US President, to Prince William and Kate. It is amazing that in our technologically advanced world, people still [3]_____ to touch and [4]_____ next to models made of wax.

It [5]_____ four months to make a model and [6]_____ about £150,000. There are Madame Tussauds museums all over the world, from Hollywood to Beijing.



So, where and when was the museum born? And who was Madame Tussaud?

B Who was Madame Tussaud?

Marie Tussaud was born in 1761 in Strasburg. Her father, a soldier, died before she was born. When Marie was still very young, her mother moved to Switzerland, where she worked as a housekeeper for a doctor called Philippe Curtius. Marie and her mother lived with the doctor. He could make brilliant wax models. Marie loved these and wanted to learn how to make them. In 1766, Curtius moved to Paris. A year later, Marie and her mother joined him. Marie showed real talent for wax modelling and during the 1780s she worked on them with Curtius. It was the time of the French Revolution, and a frightened Marie started making death masks for people who were guillotined, including King Louis XVI and Marie Antoinette.

C The move to England



Philippe Curtius [1] *died* in 1794 and Marie [2] *inherited* his waxworks. One year later, she [3]_____ François Tussaud and two sons were born, but the marriage was not successful. In 1802, Marie [4]_____ to England with the waxworks and her son, Joseph. François [5]_____ in France with the other son.

Marie couldn't speak a word of English, but she [6]_____ hard, and she [7]_____

The world's most famous waxworks museum





touring the country with her models. She [8]_____ over 70 towns in 33 years! The English were fascinated by the wax masks of dead French aristocrats.

In 1835, she [9]_____ her first museum in Baker Street, London and she worked there until 1842. She [10]_____ in London on 16 April, 1850 – she was 88. In 1884, her grandsons moved the museum to the Marylebone Road, where it still is today.

4 Match the questions and answers about text **B**.

Questions	Answers
1 When **did** Marie's father **die**?	a Dr Philippe Curtius.
2 **Did** Marie and her mother **move** to London?	b How to make wax models.
3 What **did** her mother **do**?	c During the French Revolution.
4 Who **did** they **live** with?	d Before she was born.
5 What **did** Marie want to **learn**?	e Yes, she **did**. She loved making them.
6 **Did** she **like** making wax models?	f She worked as a housekeeper.
7 When **did** she **start** making death masks?	g No, they **didn't**. They moved to Switzerland.

6.3 Listen and check. Ask and answer them with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Look at the Past Simple questions in exercise **4**. How do we form them?
Did is the past of *do* and *does*.
Didn't is the past of *don't* and *doesn't*.

2 Complete these questions and answers in the present and past.
Where _____ you live now?
Where _____ you live when you were a child?
'_____ you live in London when you were a child?' 'No, I _____.'

Grammar reference 6.2 p145

5 Read text **C** and complete it with the past form of the verbs in the box.

die (x2)	move	stay	open	work	marry	start	visit	inherit

6.4 Listen and check.

6 Complete the questions about text **C**. Ask and answer them with your partner.

1 When *did* Philippe Curtius *die*?
2 Who _____ Marie marry?
3 How many children _____ she _____?
4 When _____ she _____ to England?
5 *Did* she _____ any English?
6 _____ the English like the death masks?
7 Where and when _____ she _____ the first museum?
8 _____ she die in London? How old _____ she?

6.5 Listen and check.

What do you think?

7 What were the most important events in Madame Tussaud's life? Why?

Practice

Talking about you

1 Complete the sentences with *did*, *was*, or *were*.

1 Where _____ your parents born?
2 Where _____ you live when you _____ a child?
3 _____ you live in a house or a flat?
4 When _____ you start school?
5 Who _____ your first teacher?
6 Who _____ your best friend?
7 When _____ you learn to read and write?
8 When _____ you get your first mobile phone?

2 Stand up! Ask two or three students the questions in exercise **1**.

3 Tell the class some of the information you learned.

> Enrico's mother was born in …
> His father …

Pronunciation

4 6.6 Listen to three different pronunciations of *-ed*.

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/
worked	lived	started

5 6.7 Listen and write the Past Simple verbs in the correct column.

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/

Practise saying them.

Go online to watch a video and learn about other historical events.



'The year I was born!' Irregular verbs

1 6.8 Look at the list of irregular verbs on p155. What is the Past Simple form of the verbs in the box below? Listen and repeat.

become	begin	come	cost	give	go	fly
make	meet	pay	spend	take	win	

2 Do you know anything about the world the year you were born? Tell the class.

3 Read and complete **Liam's** birthday card with the verbs in the Past Simple.

2001 ★ **HAPPY BIRTHDAY!**
THE YEAR YOU WERE BORN!

15 JANUARY ★
'WIKIPEDIA', the free encyclopedia, first [1]_____ (*go*) online. It now has over 40 million articles.

20 JANUARY ★
George W. Bush [2]_____ (*become*) President of the United States.

19 FEBRUARY ★
The foot and mouth crisis [3]_____ (*begin*) on British farms. Farmers killed 10 million animals and it [4]_____ (*cost*) Britain £8 billion.

8 APRIL ★
Tiger Woods [5]_____ (*win*) the Masters Golf Tournament in Georgia, US, and was named 'Player of the Year'.

6 MAY ★
American billionaire, **Dennis Tito**, became the first space tourist. He [6]_____ (*go*) on the Russian Soyuz spacecraft, TM-32. He [7]_____ (*pay*) $20 million for the trip and [8] (*spend*) 8 days in space.

16 JUNE ★
President George W. Bush [9]_____ (*meet*) the Russian prime minister, Vladimir Putin for the first time at a conference in Slovenia.

11 SEPTEMBER ★
9/11 – 19 hijackers [10]_____ (*take*) control of four US airline planes. They [11]_____ (*fly*) two of them into the Twin Towers of the World Trade Centre in New York City. Almost 5,000 died.

23 OCTOBER ★
Apple computers introduced the first iPod. It [12]_____ (give) you '1,000 songs in your pocket!'.

9 NOVEMBER ★
POTTERMANIA began! The first **Harry Potter** film, 'The Philosopher's Stone' [13]_____ (*come*) out. It [14]_____ (*make*) over $970 million at the box office worldwide.

29 NOVEMBER
George Harrison died – founding member of The Beatles pop group.

15 DECEMBER ★
The Leaning Tower of Pisa in Italy reopened after 11 years. First built in 1360, it [15]_____ (*cost*) $27 million dollars to repair.







4 Work with partner. Ask and answer questions about some of the events on the card.

When did Wikipedia go online? — On January 15th.

What happened on January 20th? — George W. Bush became the US president.

5 6.9 Listen to Liam talking to his dad and read the card.



1 Which events does Liam know about?

_____

_____

2 Which does his dad remember?

_____

_____

Project

Find out *more* about the year you were born. What were the important … ?

- world events in politics, sports, entertainment
- events in your country

Practice

Regular and irregular verbs

1 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the Past Simple.

1 My parents _____ in Dublin in 1996. They _____ in 1999. (*meet, marry*).

2 I _____ late for the lesson. It _____ at two o'clock. (*arrive, begin*)

3 I _____ to school by bus today. It _____ just 40 minutes. (*come, take*)

4 We _____ shopping this morning and I _____ too much money. (*go, spend*)

5 My new jacket _____ a fortune. I _____ over £150 for it. (*cost, pay*)

6 Our football team _____ the match 3–0. Your team _____ again! (*win, lose*)

7 My mum _____ me a fabulous birthday cake, and she _____ me £50 to buy clothes. (*make, give*)

8 I _____ French for four years, but when I _____ to France I _____ understand a word. (*study, go, cannot*)

Talking about you

2 Make the sentences true for you using a positive or negative. Compare your answers with a partner.

1 I (*watch*) the news on TV yesterday evening.

I watched the news on TV yesterday evening. — I didn't watch the news on TV yesterday evening.

2 I (*get*) up early this morning.
3 I (*have*) coffee and cereal for breakfast.
4 I (*come*) to school/work by car today.
5 I (*make*) dinner for my family last Sunday.
6 I (*send*) a text just before this lesson.
7 I (*meet*) some friends last night.
8 I (*go*) shopping yesterday afternoon.

3 Work with your partner. Ask and answer questions with *When did you last … ?* and the time expressions below. Ask another question for more information.

last	yesterday
night	morning
Monday	afternoon
week	evening
month	
year	
weekend	

✗ ~~last evening~~ ✗ ~~last afternoon~~

Grammar reference 6.3 and 6.4 p145

When did you last … ?

- have a holiday
- watch a film
- go to the cinema
- talk on your phone
- send an email
- catch a bus
- give a present
- have dinner in a restaurant

When did you last have a holiday? — Last August.

Where did you go? — To Italy.

4 Tell the class some things you learned about your partner.

Nina had a holiday last August and she went to Italy.

Go online for more **grammar** practice

Reading and listening

The meaning of life?

1 Look at the photos and read the introduction to *When a businessman met a fisherman*. Answer the questions.

- Where was the businessman?
- Did he like the fish?
- What nationality were the two men?

2 6.10 Close your books. Listen to the conversation. Who do you think has the best life?

3 Are these sentences true (✓) or false (✗)? If false, correct them.

1 The businessman and the fisherman met in the evening.
2 It took the fisherman four hours to catch the tuna.
3 He stopped fishing because he had enough fish for his family.
4 The fisherman doesn't have any free time activities.
5 The businessman went to Harvard University.
6 He gives the fisherman lots of advice.
7 The fisherman gave the businessman some fish.
8 He went to a bar with the businessman.

4 6.10 Read and complete the story of *The businessman and the fisherman*. Listen to the conversation again and check.

Vocabulary

5 Match the verbs in **A** with a noun or phrase in **B**.

A	B
go	songs
become	lunch
catch	fish
have	a millionaire
earn	to the village
sing	money
start	a business
take	on holiday
walk	a siesta

What do you think?

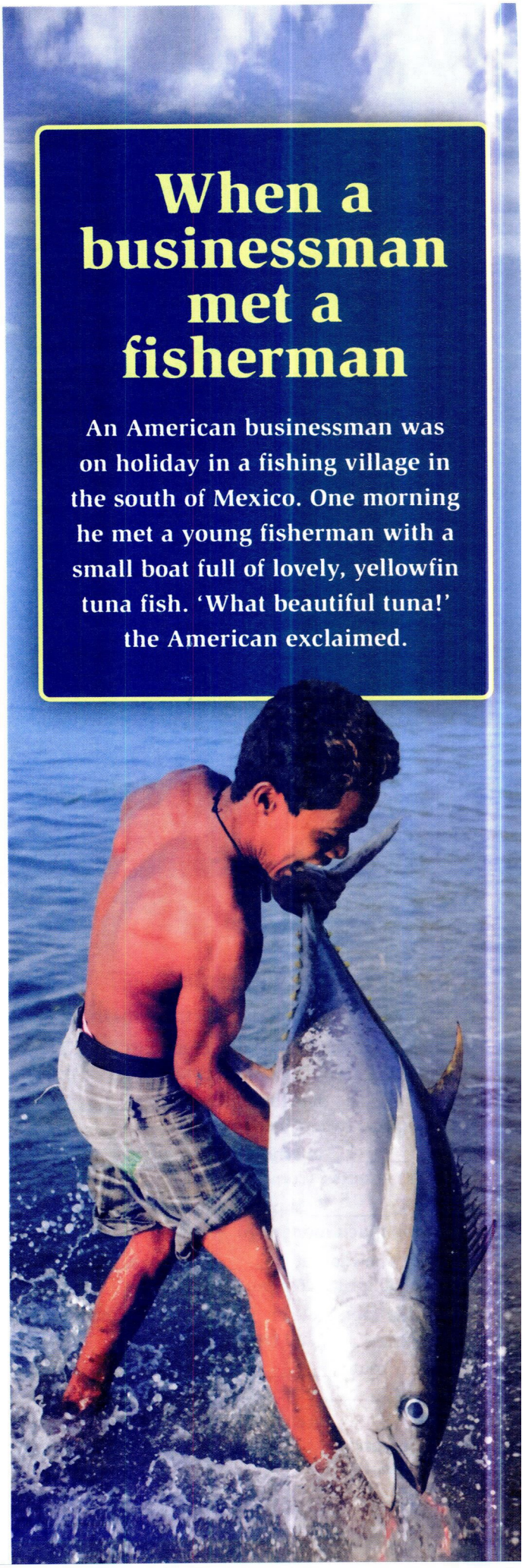
- Do you think the fisherman followed the businessman's advice? Why/Why not?
- Do you think the businessman learned a lesson from the meeting?
- What is the moral of this story?

"Money makes the world go round."

"Don't listen to other people's advice."

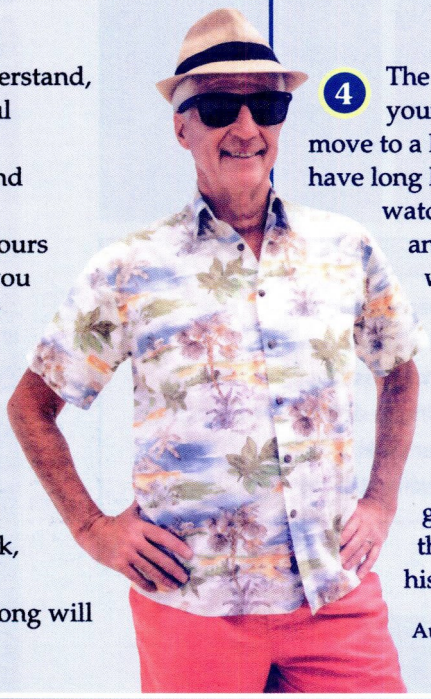
"Work more, earn more!"

"There are some things money can't buy."



1 'How long did it [1]_____ to catch them?' the American asked.
'Oh, about two hours,' said the fisherman.
'Why didn't you fish for longer and catch more?'
The Mexican replied, 'I [2]_____ want to fish for longer. With this I have enough fish for my family.'
'But what do you do with the rest of your day?'
The fisherman smiled, 'I [3]_____ a long lunch, play with my children, watch football, and take a siesta with my wife. [4]_____ in the evenings I walk to the village to see my friends, play the guitar, and sing some songs.'

2 The American couldn't understand, 'Look, I am a very successful businessman.
I [5]_____ to Harvard University and I studied business.
I [6]_____ help you. Fish for four hours every day and sell the extra fish you catch. Then, you can buy a bigger boat, catch more and [7]_____ more money. Then buy a second boat, a third, and so on, until you have a big fleet of fishing boats. You can export the fish and leave this village and [8]_____ to Mexico City, or LA or New York, and start a fishing business.'
The fisherman smiled, 'But how long will all this take?'



3 The businessman thought about it for a bit, 'Probably [9]_____ 15–20 years,' he said.
'And then what, señor?' asked the fisherman.
'Why, that's the best part!' laughed the businessman. 'You can sell your business and become very [10]_____, a millionaire.'
'A millionaire? Really? But what do I do with all the money?' asked the young fisherman.



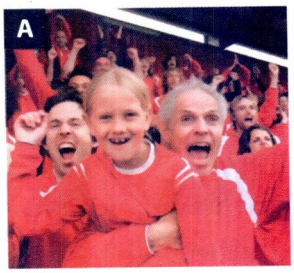
4 The businessman [11]_____ not understand this young man, 'Well, you can [12]_____ work and move to a lovely, old fishing village where you can have long lunches, play with your grandchildren, watch football, take a siesta with your wife, and walk to the village in the evenings where you can play the guitar and sing with your friends all you want.'
The fisherman's children came running to meet him. 'Papa, papa, [13]_____ you catch many fish?'
'I caught enough for us today and tomorrow, and also some for this gentleman,' said their father. He [14]_____ the businessman some fish, thanked him for his advice and went home with his family.

Author Unknown



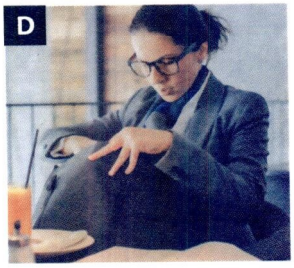
Vocabulary and listening Describing feelings

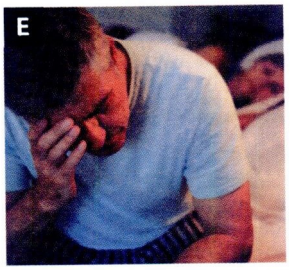
1 6.11 Match the feelings and reasons with the photos, then listen and check.













	Feelings		Reasons
I'm	☐ bored ☑ excited ☐ tired ☐ disappointed ☐ worried ☐ annoyed	because	I couldn't sleep last night. my football team won the cup. I can't find my passport. I have nothing to do and nowhere to go. I got another parking ticket. I didn't do well in the test.

-ed and *-ing* adjectives

Some adjectives can end in both *-ed* and *-ing*.
The book was **interesting**. I was **interested** in the book.
The lesson was **boring**. The students were **bored**.

2 Complete each sentence with the correct adjective.

1 **excited, exciting**
Life in New York is very …
It's my birthday tomorrow. I'm really …

2 **tired, tiring**
The marathon runners were very …
That game of tennis was very …

3 **annoyed, annoying**
Their children's behaviour is really …
The teacher was … because nobody did the homework.

4 **worried, worrying**
We were very … when we heard the news.
The news is very …

5 **disappointed, disappointing**
Our holiday was really … . The hotel was awful.
My sister was so … because she was ill and missed the school disco.

3 Work with a partner. Complete the conversations with *-ed* and *-ing* adjectives.

1 **A** Did you enjoy the film?
B No, I didn't. I was _____ from start to finish.
A What!? It wasn't _____ at all. It was really _____ and very funny.
B Well, I didn't laugh once!

2 **C** How was your exam?
D Awful. I'm really _____. I don't think I'll pass.
C But you worked really hard.
D I know, I studied until two in the morning, but then I was so _____ today I couldn't read the questions.
C Don't worry. I'm sure you'll be OK.

3 **E** I'm so _____. I really wanted my team to win this week.
F Did they lose again?
E No, it was a draw, nil-nil!
F What a _____ game!
E I know, and now I'm so _____ because I paid £45 for my ticket!

4 **G** When's Nina's birthday party?
H You mean 'when was it'. It was last Friday, on her birthday.
G Oh no! Was she _____ that I forgot?
H No, she was just _____ that you didn't come to her party.

6.12 Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

Go online for more **vocabulary** practice

Everyday English What's the date?

1 Write the correct word next to the numbers.

fourth	twelfth	sixth	twentieth
second	thirtieth	thirteenth	fifth
seventeenth	tenth	sixteenth	first
third	twenty-second	thirty-first	

1st
2nd
3rd
4th
5th
6th
10th
12th
13th
16th
17th
20th
22nd
30th
31st

6.13 Listen and practise saying the ordinals.

2 Ask and answer questions with a partner about the months of the year.

Which is the first month? January.

1 We write: **3/4/2015** or **3 April 2015**
We say: 'The third of April, two thousand and fifteen.' or 'April the third, twenty fifteen.'

2 Notice how we say these years:

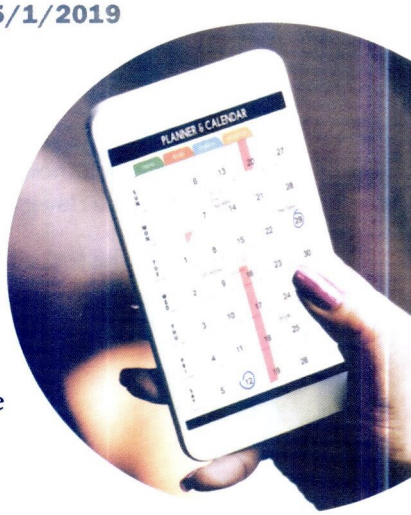
1900	nineteen hundred
1907	nineteen oh seven
2005	two thousand and five
2019	two thousand and nineteen, or twenty nineteen

3 Practise saying these dates.

1 April	29/2/76
2 March	19/12/83
17 September	3/10/99
19 November	31/5/2004
23 June	15/1/2019

6.14 Listen and check.

4 6.15 Listen and write the dates you hear.



Talking about you

5 Ask and answer the questions with your partner.

1 What's the date today?
2 When did this school course start? When does it end?
3 When's Christmas Day?
4 When's Valentine's Day?
5 When's your birthday?
6 What are the dates of public holidays in your country?
7 What century is it now?
8 What were some important dates in the last century?

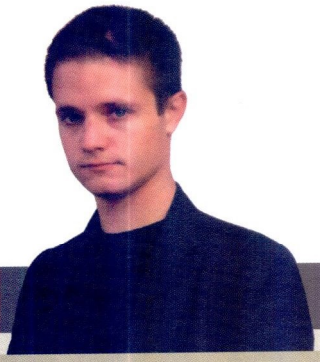
6 Write some important dates for you. Ask and answer questions about the dates with your partner.

Go online for more **speaking** practice

Writing A biography

Linking words (2): *however, when, until*

1 Read about **Ben Way**.



THE MULTIMILLIONAIRE – BEN WAY

Ben Way is an amazing man. When just 17 he was one of the first dotcom millionaires. Then he lost it all ... now he's a millionaire again.

A	B	C
Ben Way is 37 years old	because	he runs a company called 'Rainmakers'.
Ben's a computer millionaire.	so	he wasn't always so successful.
As a child, he was dyslexic	and	he didn't do well at school.
He didn't read or write	However	he was nine and his father gave him a computer.
He wrote his first software program	but	he was 11.
He didn't go to university	when	at 15 he started his own company.
He first became a millionaire	until	he was just 17.
He continued to be very successful		he was 21.
He won a business award in 2000,		then in 2001 he lost it all.
One year later he started 'Rainmakers'		now he's a millionaire again.

2 Join the lines in **A** and **C** with a linking word from **B** to tell his story.

6.16 Listen and compare. Take turns to read the sentences about Ben aloud.

3 Write some notes about someone you know who is successful. Talk to your partner about him or her.

- What's his/her name?
- What does he/she do?
- How do you know him/her?
- Was he/she clever at school?
- How did he/she become successful?
- Did he/she have any ups and downs?
- When and where do you see him/her?

4 Complete the text about Gabriella with linking words from **1**.

My successful cousin Gabriella

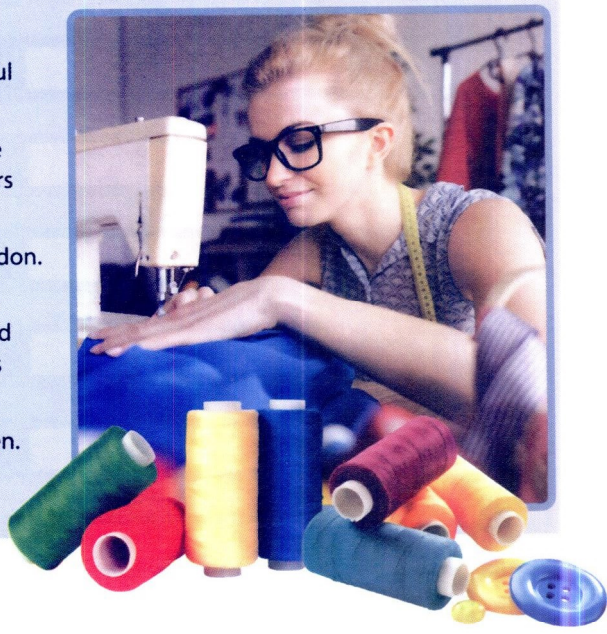
My cousin Gabriella is only 24 years old [1]_____ she is already a very successful dress designer.

Gabriella and I played a lot together [2]_____ we were children [3]_____ we were the same age. We also went to the same school [4]_____ we were 18 years old. [5]_____, after school we didn't see each other very often.

Gabriella was always very artistic [6]_____ she went to a fashion school in London. I went to Oxford University and studied law [7]_____ I wanted to be a lawyer.

Four years later, I'm still a poor student, [8]_____ my cousin Gabriella is rich and famous. She won a major fashion award [9]_____ she was just 22. Our family is very proud of her.

Gabriella and I now have very different lives [10]_____ we don't meet very often. [11]_____, we still stay in touch by email and texting. She's in Milan this week for a fashion show. I love hearing about her life [12]_____ it is very exciting.



5 Write about a successful person that you know. Use your notes.

Go online for more **writing** practice

language

7 Remember when ...

- Grammar Past Simple (2), Time expressions
- Vocabulary Adverbs
- Everyday English Special occasions
- Reading Forgotten female firsts
- Listening Noises in the night
- Writing Telling a story



1 What's in the photo?
2 What was your favourite toy? Why?

Watch the video introduction online

Use your **Workbook** for self study

Go online for more practice and to *Check your Progress*

Grammar Past Simple (2) – questions and negatives

STARTER

20TH CENTURY QUIZ How much do you know about events in the last century?

1 Work in groups. Do the history quiz. Discuss your answers with the class.

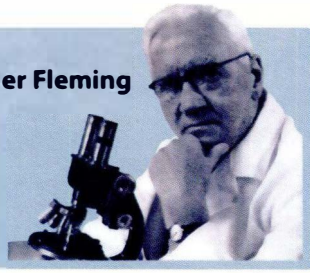
1 When did Henry Ford sell the first Model-T motor car?
a in 1901
b in 1908
c in 1918



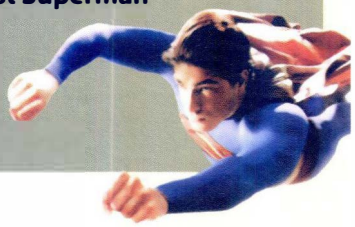
2 When was the Russian Revolution?
a in 1914
b in 1917
c in 1924

3 How many people died of flu between 1918 and 1919?
a 2 million
b 10 million
c 50 million

4 What did Alexander Fleming discover in 1928?
a X-rays
b DNA
c penicillin



5 When did the first Superman comic appear?
a in 1939
b in 1949
c in 1959





6 When did people start using digital computers?
a about 85 years ago
b about 65 years ago
c about 45 years ago

7 How much did the first colour TV cost in 1955?
a $195
b $495
c $1295





8 On which date in 1969 did man first land on the moon?
a on July 20
b on May 3
c on August 13

9 When did the Berlin Wall come down?
a in 1945
b in 1975
c in 1989



10 When did the public start using the Internet?
a about 25 years ago
b about 35 years ago
c about 45 years ago

2 7.1 Listen and check your answers. Which group won the quiz? What other information did you learn? Did anything surprise you?

The good old days?

1 7.2 Listen to Billy talking to his grandad, Roger, about when Roger was young. Tick (✓) the things they talk about.

- ☐ programmes on TV
- ☐ sport
- ☐ pocket money
- ☐ holidays
- ☐ housework
- ☐ comics
- ☐ school



2 7.2 Listen again and complete Billy's questions.

1 Did you *have* television?
2 *How many* TV channels *were* there?
3 So _____ did programmes begin?
4 _____ much pocket money _____ you get?
5 _____ sort of comics _____ you _____?
6 So _____ _____ you _____ on holiday?
7 _____ _____ you _____ there?
8 _____ _____ you always _____ to the same place?

7.3 Listen and check. With a partner, ask and answer the questions.

3 Imagine what Roger said about these things.

In those days …

- we / not / have mobile phones
  In those days we didn't have mobile phones.
- children / not / play video games
- people / not / buy things with credit cards
- we / not / shop online
- restaurants / not / serve fast food

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Write the **Past Simple** form.

Present Simple	Past Simple
I want to go. He likes it.	*I wanted to go.*
Do you watch TV? Where does she work?	
I don't eat sweets. They don't go out much.	

2 Complete the time expressions.

1 Henry Ford sold the first Model-T Ford _____ 1908.
2 I was born _____ April 28, 1991.
3 This lesson began _____ nine o'clock.
4 Billy saw Roger two days _____.

Grammar reference 7.1–7.2 p146

Practice

1 Match a question word in **A** with a line in **B** and an answer in **C**.

A	B	C
1 Where	did you buy?	A friend from work.
2 When	did you go?	By bus.
3 Who	did you go with?	Yesterday.
4 How	did you pay?	£150.
5 Why	did you get there?	To the shops.
6 What		Because I wanted some new clothes.
7 How many		Some shirts and jumpers.
8 How much		Three shirts and two jumpers.

7.4 Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers with a partner.

Roger's life

2 Work with a partner. You have different information about Roger's life.

Student A Look at p150. **Student B** Look at p153.

Ask and answer questions.

How many brothers and sisters did he have? — He had two sisters and a brother.

When was Roger born? — He was born in 1951.



Talking about you

3 Write the correct preposition.

in at on

_____ eleven o' clock
_____ night
_____ the evening
_____ Saturday
_____ Sunday morning
_____ the weekend
_____ 2018
_____ July
_____ August 24th
_____ the summer
_____ the 20th century

4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions with *When … ?* Use a time expression and/or *ago* in your answer.

When did … ?

- you go to bed last night
- you get up today
- you leave the house
- arrive at school/work
- you start learning English
- this class start
- you last go on holiday
- your parents get married
- you last check your phone
- you last have a coffee break

When did you go to bed last night?

At about 10.00. I was really tired!

5 Tell the class about your day up to now.

I got up at seven o'clock and had breakfast.
I left the house at …

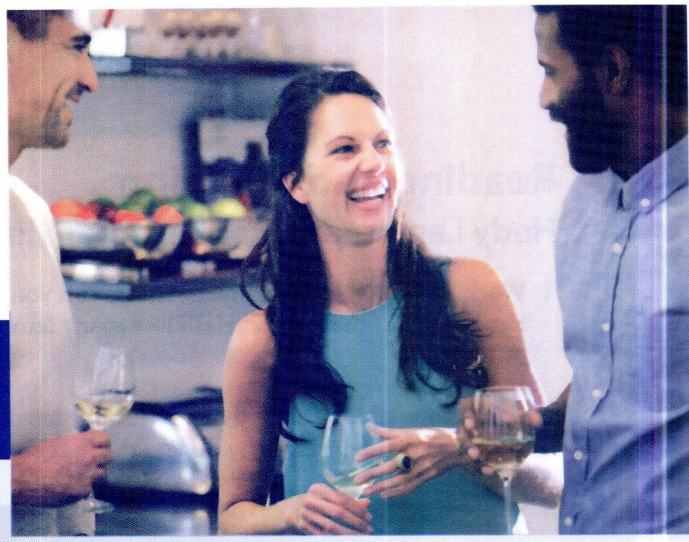
Listening and pronunciation

6 7.5 Listen and tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

1 a ☐ Where did you want to go?
  b ☐ Why did you want to go?
2 a ☐ I don't go to college.
  b ☐ I didn't go to college.
3 a ☐ Where is he?
  b ☐ Where was he?
4 a ☐ Do you like it?
  b ☐ Did you like it?
5 a ☐ Why did she come?
  b ☐ Why didn't she come?
6 a ☐ They were here.
  b ☐ They weren't here.

Go online for more **grammar** practice

Speaking Talking about your life



1 Work with a partner. **Owen** is talking to **Nicole** at a party. Look at Owen's questions and the notes in Nicole's answers. What did Nicole say?

AT A PARTY

Owen You aren't English, are you Nicole? Where are you from?

Nicole *No / French. / born / Toulouse.*

Owen Is that where you grew up?

Nicole *Yes / lived / parents / brother / house near the university. / father worked / university.*

Owen Oh, how interesting! What did he do? Was he a teacher?

Nicole *Yes / professor / music.*

Owen Really! What does he play?

Nicole *brilliant pianist.*

Owen How wonderful! And what about your mother? What's her job?

Nicole *retired / but / doctor. / worked / hospital.*

Owen So did you go to school in Toulouse?

Nicole *Yes / catholic high school. I / ten years. Then / university*

Owen What did you study?

Nicole *English and Education / Paris, and then / studied / one year / London.*

Owen Ah! That's why your English is so good! And did you start work straight after that?

Nicole *No / travelled / Africa / few months, then / taught / school in Senegal.*

Owen That sounds great! And what's your job now?

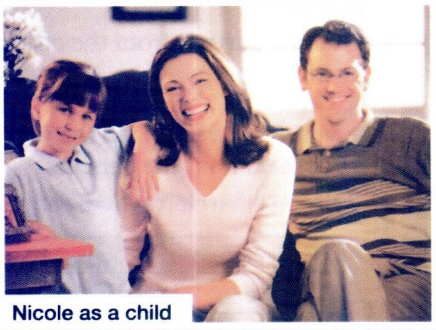
Nicole *teach / high school / Paris. / English and French.*

Owen I'm sure you're a brilliant teacher!

Nicole *Anyway, what / you?*



Nicole at work



Nicole as a child

7.6 Listen and compare.



2 Practise the conversation with a partner. Swap roles and practise again.

3 Make some notes about your own life story.

4 Work in groups. Tell the group your life story. Ask and answer questions.
Where did you … ? **How long … ?** **Did you … ?** **Who did you … ?**

Reading and speaking

Hedy Lamarr and Rosalind Franklin

1 Work as a class. How many inventors can you think of in two minutes? How many of them are male? How many female inventors did you think of?

2 Look at the photos of Hedy Lamarr and Rosalind Franklin, and read the quotes and headings. Why do you think these women were important?

3 Work in two groups.

Group A: Read about Hedy Lamarr
Group B: Read about Rosalind Franklin

Answer the questions.

1 Where and when was she born?
2 What did she enjoy doing as a child?
3 Why didn't she get all her qualifications?
4 What was her first work?
5 What was her problem in life?
6 What did she like to do in her free time?
7 What was she the first person to do?
8 Who didn't take her seriously?
9 When did she die?
10 What did Google do on her birthday?

4 Find a partner from the other group. Ask the questions in **3** and swap your answers.

5 Match the verbs with the words for each person. Use them to tell your partner about the person.

Hedy Lemarr left school early and started drama school.

Hedy Lamarr	
1 leave	bored with
2 run	seriously
3 get	school
4 take	away

Rosalind Franklin	
5 do	her story
6 take	a prize
7 win	photographs
8 tell	maths exercises

What do you think?

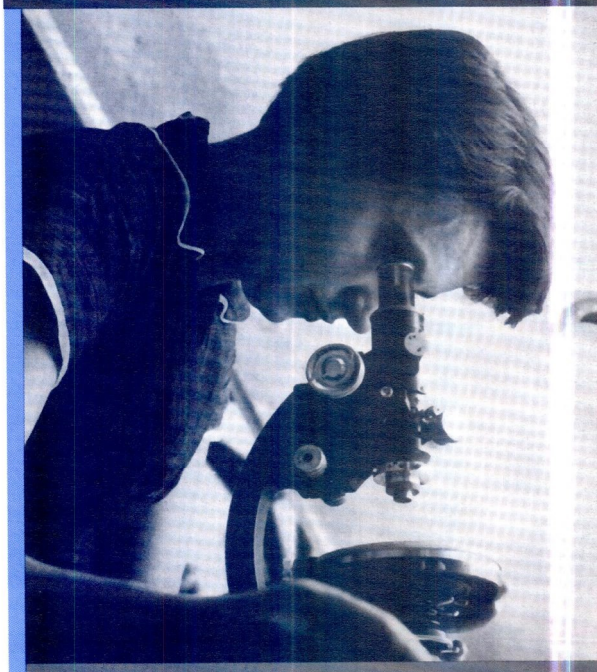
- Who do you think had the most difficult life, Hedy Lamarr or Rosalind Franklin? Why?
- Why do you think there were more male inventors and scientists than female in the past?
- Is it still true today? Why/Why not?
- Are there more famous male writers and artists than female ones? Why/Why not?

Go online for more **speaking** practice



"Any girl can be glamorous – all you have to do is stand still and look stupid."

Hedy Lamarr



"Science and everyday life cannot and should not be separated."

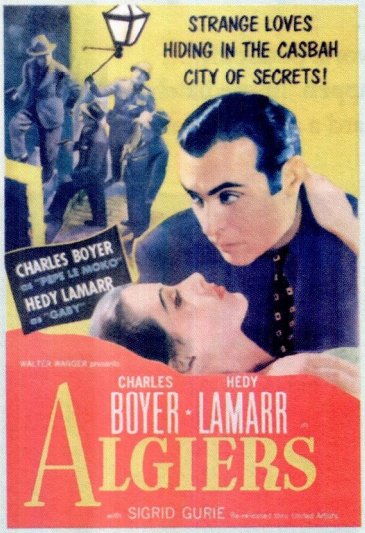
Rosalind Franklin

FORGOTTEN FEMALE FIRSTS

HEDY LAMARR

The Hollywood film star behind the invention of Wi-fi and mobile phones.

The Austrian actress Hedy Lamarr was born in Vienna in 1914, as Hedwig Kiesler. She was a very clever girl, always interested in how things worked – she loved taking her music boxes to pieces and putting them together again. However, she also loved acting, so she left school early without qualifications and started drama school.



Hedy the film star

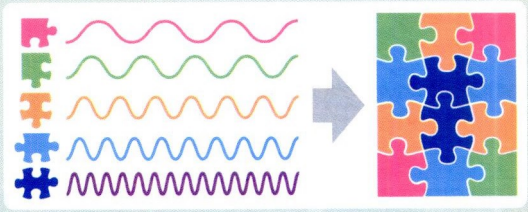
Hedwig first worked in Czechoslovakian films, and she quickly became a successful actress, often called 'the most beautiful woman in the world'. She married in 1933, but her husband didn't want her to work, and kept her locked in the house.

Finally, in 1937, she ran away to Paris. There she met an American film producer, and under her new name, Hedy Lamarr, she was soon a famous Hollywood actress.

Hedy's problem was that she soon got bored with film roles that were just about being beautiful. She didn't enjoy Hollywood parties, and liked to spend her free time inventing things.

Wartime work

During World War II, she had an idea for making it difficult for the Germans to stop American radio signals. She was the first person to think of sending bits of information on different radio waves, and then putting them together when they arrived – like a jigsaw. Sadly, the US Navy didn't take her seriously.

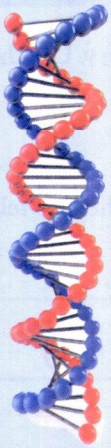


No one understood how important Hedy's work was until many years later, and not many people know that it is her idea that makes Wi-fi and mobile phones possible today. She died in 2000. In 2015, Google told her story in one of their 'doodles' on her birthday.

ROSALIND FRANKLIN

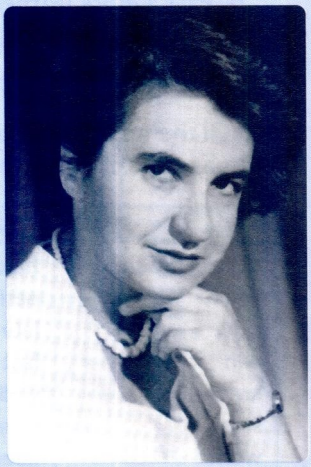
The scientist who didn't get the Nobel Prize for discovering the structure of DNA.

The British scientist Rosalind Franklin was born in London in 1920. She was a very intelligent girl, and did maths exercises in her free time because she loved it! She went to Cambridge University, where she worked very hard studying Chemistry. However, she didn't actually get a degree when she finished her course – this was in 1938, and at that time only men could receive degrees.



Finding her place

Her first job was in a laboratory in Paris, where she took X-ray photographs of chemicals to learn more about their structure. She enjoyed living in France, and spent her free time walking in the mountains. When she went back to London in 1951, she worked with the scientist Maurice Wilkins in Kings College, and began studying DNA.



Her problem was working with male scientists – they often didn't take female scientists seriously. Wilkins wanted Franklin to be his assistant, and when she wanted to do her own work, he called her a 'dark lady'. In the evenings, Franklin couldn't eat in the same college dining room as the men.

Discovering DNA

Franklin's work went well, and she was the first person to show DNA's structure in a photograph. Wilkins showed the photo and her work to two other scientists, James Watson and Frances Crick – he did this without asking Franklin. When Watson and Crick later won the Nobel Prize for discovering the structure of DNA, they didn't say that Franklin's work was very important in their discovery.

Rosalind died of cancer in 1958, probably because of all her work with X-rays. In 2013, on her birthday, Google told her story in one of their 'doodles'.

Vocabulary and listening

Adverbs

1 Look at these sentences from the texts on p75. The words in **bold** are **adverbs**. What do adverbs do?

- She **quickly** became a successful actress.
- **Sadly**, the US Navy didn't take her **seriously**.
- She worked very **hard**.
- Franklin's work went **well**.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Regular adverbs end in *-ly*.

quickly	slowly	carefully
quietly	badly	easily

2 There are some common irregular adverbs.

go **well**	work **hard**
drive **fast**	get up **early/late**

Grammar reference 7.3 p146

2 Are the words in *italics* adjectives or adverbs?

1 a You're a *bad* boy!
  b I slept *badly* last night.
2 a We'll need to work *quickly*.
  b Pat's a *quick* learner.
3 a It's a *hard* life sometimes.
  b I work *hard* and I play *hard*.

3 Match the **verbs** with the **adverbs**. There is often more than one possible answer.

Verbs	Adverbs
speak English	hard
walk	easily
drive	late
win	fast
arrive	well
sing	carefully
work	fluently

4 Put the word in brackets into the correct place in the sentence. Sometimes more than one place is possible.

1 We had a holiday in Greece. (*terrible*)
2 I lost my passport. (*unfortunately*)
3 I went to the British Embassy. (*immediately*)
4 It was a drive because the traffic was bad. (*long*)
5 Fortunately, Helen's a driver. (*good*)
6 She speaks Greek. (*well*)

Telling a story

5 Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

1 It started to rain. Fortunately, **I had an umbrella**.
2 I was shopping in the city centre with Elaine. Unfortunately, …
3 I left my bag on the bus. Luckily, …
4 We went on a skiing holiday. Sadly, …
5 The email was from a stranger, asking for my bank details. Obviously, …
6 I was on the bus to work. Suddenly, …
7 I saw the accident happen. Immediately, …
8 I woke up when I heard a noise downstairs. Slowly, I …

6 7.7 Look at the picture and listen to the man. What did he hear in the middle of the night?



7 7.7 Listen again. Number the adverbs in the order that you hear them.

- ☐ carefully
- ☐ obviously
- 1 suddenly
- ☐ calmly
- ☐ slowly
- ☐ immediately
- ☐ quickly
- ☐ quietly
- ☐ silently
- ☐ fortunately

8 Work with a partner. Take turns to tell the story. Use the adverbs in 7 to help.

Talking about you

9 Choose some adverbs from the box and use them to tell your partner about you or people you know.

I eat quickly. **My sister sings well.** **I can …**

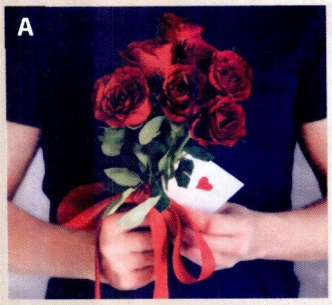
slowly	well	easily	late	quietly
hard	carefully	early	quickly	badly

Go online for more **vocabulary** practice

Everyday English Special occasions

1 Look at the list of days. Which are special days? Match them to the photos.

birthday	yesterday	Easter Day
Christmas Day	Mother's Day	today
Halloween	Monday	New Year's Eve
Valentine's Day	Friday	wedding day
tomorrow		

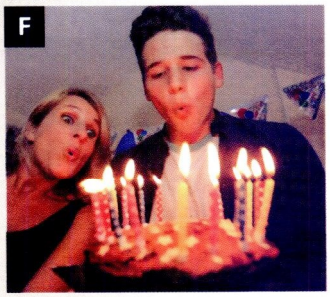
















2 Which special days do you celebrate in your country? What do you do on these days?

make a cake	wear special clothes
give cards and presents	have a party
sing a special song	have a special meal
have fireworks	go out with friends

3 Complete the lines. What are the occasions?

1 Happy _____ to you.
Happy _____ to you.
Happy _____, dear Joseph.
Happy _____ to you.

2 **A** Did you get any cards?
B Yes, I did. Listen to this …
Roses are red, violets are blue.
You are my _____,
And I love you.
A Wow! Do you know who it's from?
B I'm not sure. I know who I want it to be from!

3 **C** Mummy! Daddy! Wake up! It's _____!
D Mmm. What time is it…? Mmm six o'clock …
C Yes, it's morning! Look at the present Father _____ left for me!
E Oh, that's lovely! Merry _____, darling!

4 **F&G** Trick or treat!
H Wow, what fantastic _____ costumes! You two look very scary!
F Have you got any sweets to give us?
H Of course I have. Here you are, two chocolates each.

5 **I** It's midnight! Happy _____ _____, everyone!
J/K/L _____ _____ _____!
♫ *Should old acquaintance be forgot …* ♫

6 **M** Wake up, Mummy! Happy _____ _____!
N Thank you, darling! Oh, what beautiful flowers! And chocolates! And a cup of tea!! Well, aren't I lucky!
M And we made you a card!
N Oh, that's wonderful! Aren't you clever children!

7 **O** Congratulations! It's great news!
P Thank you! We're both very happy!
O So when's the _____ day?
P May the 5th. You'll get an invitation!

7.8 Listen and check. Work with a partner. Learn some of the conversations by heart.

Go online to watch a video about two very different weddings and two special birthday parties.



Writing Telling a story

Using time expressions

1 Work with a partner. Do you know anything about Marie Curie? Look at the pictures and share what you know.

2 Read these lines about Marie Curie. Match them with the pictures.

a ☐ Marie drove trucks with X-ray machines to the soldiers on the front line

b ☐ women couldn't go to university in Poland

c ☐ people didn't understand then that radioactivity was dangerous

d ☐ Marie could only sit and listen to his talk

e ☐ and the first and only woman to receive two, in different sciences

f ☐ They married in 1895

g ☐ they discovered two new elements

3 Read the story of Marie Curie. Complete the gaps with the correct line (a–g) from exercise **2**.

4 What do the highlighted time expressions in the story refer to?

on November 7, 1867
when Marie was born

at that time
when women couldn't go to university in Poland

5 Work with a partner. Use the pictures to tell the story of Marie Curie in your own words.

Project

Research and make notes on a historical character from your country. Write the story, using time expressions.

- give an introduction
- give information about his/her early life.
- give facts about the important things he/she did
- talk about his/her final years

Go online for more **writing** practice

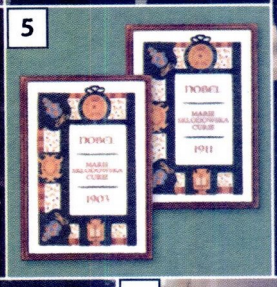
Marie Curie



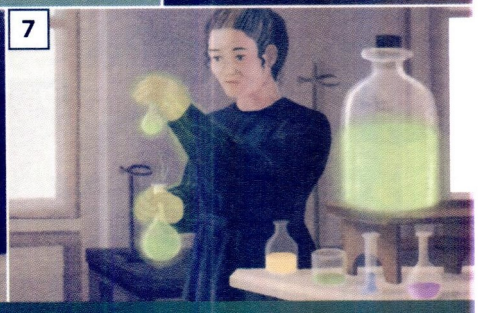












Marie Curie was a Polish scientist who worked in France. As a woman, it was difficult for her to get the education she wanted, but she became the most famous female scientist of all time.

Early life

She was born Maria Skoldowska, in Warsaw, on November 7, 1867. She was a very bright child, but at that time, [1] *b* . In 1891, she went to Paris to study physics at the Sorbonne University. She met Pierre Curie there, a Professor of Physics. [2] ___.

Nobel success

Pierre and Marie worked together on the new science of 'radioactivity' (a word which Marie invented). Between 1898 and 1902, [3] ___, polonium and radium. They received the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1903. At first, the prize was for Pierre only, but he asked that Marie receive it, too. Pierre gave their presentation when they received the prize in Sweden – [4] ___.

Another prize

Pierre died in a road accident in April 1906. One month later, Marie became the first woman to teach at the Sorbonne. After five years of teaching and doing research, she received a second Nobel Prize, for Chemistry, in 1911. Marie was the first woman to receive a Nobel Prize, [5] ___.

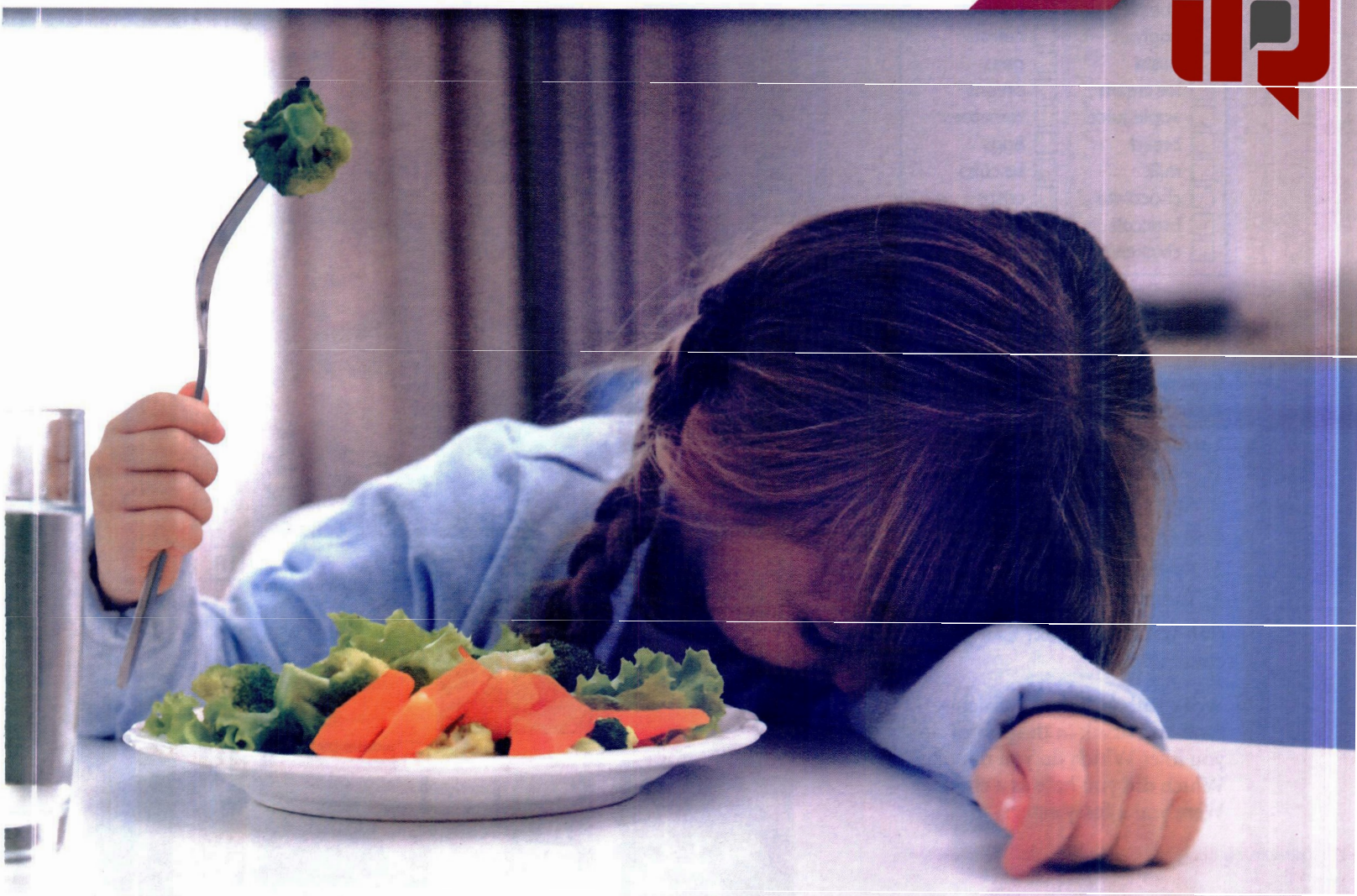
Final years

Curie's work made the use of X-rays possible, and during the First World War, [6] ___. A few years later, Marie began to have problems with her health. Then, the doctors discovered that she had leukaemia. It was from all the radioactivity she received in her work, but [7] ___. Finally, she died on July 4, 1934.

"There is nothing to fear in life. That's the only thing you need to understand." MARIE CURIE

Love it or hate it! 8

- **Grammar** Count & uncount nouns, *some, any, a lot of*
- **Vocabulary** Food and drink
- **Everyday English** In the High Street
- **Reading** The history of ice cream
- **Listening** A meal to remember
- **Writing** Formal/Informal writing



1 What food can you see? Does the girl like it?

2 Did you like these foods when you were a child?

Watch the video introduction online

Use your **Workbook** for self study

Go online for more practice and to *Check your Progress*

STARTER

Grammar Count and uncount nouns – *some, any, a lot of*

1 Match the food and drink in **A** and **B** with the photos. Which list has plural nouns?

A	B
☐ tea	☐ bananas
☐ coffee	☐ apples
☐ wine	☐ strawberries
☐ cheese	☐ potatoes
☐ yoghurt	☐ carrots
☐ pasta	☐ peas
☐ ice cream	☐ onions
☐ apple juice	☐ tomatoes
☐ bread	☐ eggs
☐ milk	☐ biscuits
☐ chocolate	☐ crisps
☐ broccoli	☐ chips
☐ chicken	☐ sausages

8.1 Listen and then say the words as a class.

2 Complete these sentences with *is* and *are*.

Uncount nouns

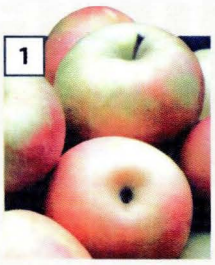
1 Milk ____ good for you.
2 Apple juice ____ delicious.

Count nouns

3 Apples ____ delicious.
4 Tomatoes ____ good for you.

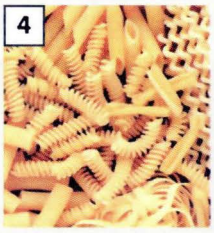
Can you count milk? Can you count apples?

3 Work with a partner. Which food and drink in the photos do you like? Which do you not like? Which did you hate as a child? Were you a fussy eater?


1


2


3


4


5

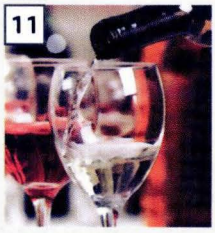

6


7


8


9

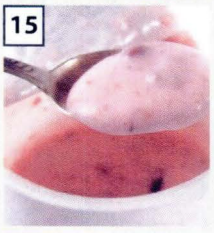

10

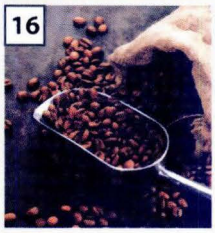

11


12


13

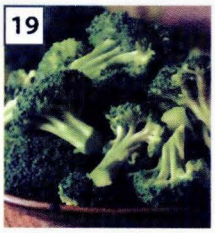

14


15


16

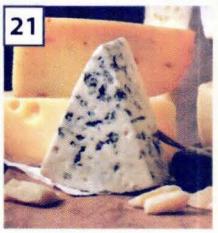

17


18


19



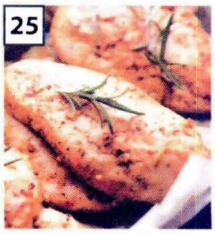
20


21


22


23


24


25


26

Were you a fussy eater?



1 8.2 **Jake** and **Matt** are students. Listen to their conversation.

- Who is the fussy eater?
- Which foods on p80 *didn't* Jake like when he was a kid? What *did* he like?
- Where do they go to eat?

2 8.2 Listen again and complete the lines.

1 Oh, good, we have *some* tomatoes.
2 _____ tomatoes for me. I hate _____.
3 I didn't like _____ _____ of things when I was a kid.
4 I didn't like _____ vegetables.
5 'I hated _____ green vegetables.' 'Do you like _____ now?'
6 I still can't eat broccoli. I hate _____.
7 Did you like _____ fruit?
8 I liked _____ fruit but not _____.
9 I drank _____ _____ of orange juice.
10 I liked pasta, too, with tomato sauce and _____ cheese on top.

GRAMMAR SPOT

Look at the sentences. When do we use *some* and *any*?

There's **some** milk.	There are **some** eggs.
There isn't **any** milk.	There aren't **any** eggs.
Is there **any** milk?	Are there **any** eggs?

Grammar reference 8.1–8.2 p146

Do you like ... ?/Would you like ... ?

3 Jake and Matt are in an Italian restaurant. Complete the conversation with the phrases.

Would you like	**I'd like**	**I'd like to**
Do you like ...	**I really like ...**	**likes ...**

W Good evening, guys. What would you like?
M [1] _____ the Spaghetti Bolognese, please.
J Same for me, please. [2] _____ spaghetti.
W Fine! And would you like the wine list?
J No, thanks. Just a glass of wine for me. [3] _____ red wine, Matt?
M Yeah. Let's get a bottle of house red.
J Fine! And some water too, please.
W Of course. [4] _____ sparkling or still?
M Just some tap water, please.
W No problem. Thanks guys.
J Hey, it's our turn to cook for the others tomorrow. What would you like to cook?
M [5] _____ cook my very favourite meal.
J And what's that?
M 'Toad in the Hole'. My mum makes the best 'Toad in the Hole' – I can get her recipe.
J 'Toad in the Hole'! Ugh! What's it made of? Toads?
M Of course not! It's made with sausages ... and you like sausages.
J I love them. Everyone [6] _____ sausages.

In an Italian restaurant



8.3 Listen and check.

4 Read the sentences. Which are true (✓)? Which are false (✗). Correct the false ones.

1 Jake and Matt would both like the same meal.
2 Jake doesn't like spaghetti very much.
3 They'd like two glasses of red wine.
4 They don't want any water.
5 Matt would like to cook a special meal for their housemates.
6 Jake really likes eating 'Toad in the Hole'.

5 Practise the conversation with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Which pair of sentences mean *Do you want/I want ...?*

A **Do** you **like** wine?	**B** **Would** you **like** some wine?
I **like** spaghetti.	**I'd like** some spaghetti. (*I'd = I would*)

2 We use ***some***, not *any* when we request and offer things.

Would you like **some** wine?	Can we have **some** water?

3 We use ***any***, not *some* in other questions and negatives.

Is there **any** pasta?	There aren't **any** apples.

Grammar reference 8.3 p146

Practice

Do you like ...?/Would you like ...?

1 Choose *Would/Do you like … ?* or *I/I'd like …*

1 **A** Excuse me, are you ready to order?
B *Yes. I like/Yes. I'd like* a steak, please.

2 **A** *Would you like/Do you like* a sandwich?
B No, thanks. I'm not hungry.

3 **A** *Do you like/Would you like* Ella?
B Yes. She's very nice.

4 **A** *Do you like/Would you like* a cold drink?
B Yes, please. I'd love one.

5 **A** Can I help you?
B Yes. *We like/We'd like* a table for two, please.

6 **A** What do you do in your free time?
B Well, *I like/I'd like* going to the gym.

8.4 Listen and check. Practise with a partner.

2 8.5 Listen to the questions and tick (✓) the correct answers.

1 ☐ I like French wine, especially red.
☐ We'd like a bottle of French red wine.

2 ☐ Just cheese, please. I don't like ham.
☐ I'd like a cheese and ham sandwich.

3 ☐ I'd like a book by Jodi Picoult.
☐ I like books by Jodi Picoult.

4 ☐ I'd like a new computer.
☐ I like Apple Macs more than PCs.

5 ☐ I'd like a dog, but Dad says no.
☐ I like dogs, but I don't like cats much.

6 ☐ No, thanks. I don't like ice cream.
☐ I'd like some ice cream, please.

8.6 Listen and check. Practise with your partner.

a, an or *some*?

3 Write *a*, *an* or *some*.

1 *a* banana
2 *some* bread
3 _____ milk
4 _____ eggs
5 _____ apple
6 _____ money
7 _____ biscuit
8 _____ flour
9 _____ sandwiches
10 _____ onion

Cooking for friends

some/any/a lot, much/many



1 **Matt** wants to cook **'Toad in the Hole'** for his friends. Look at the photos and the recipe. What do you think 'Toad in the Hole' is? What is it **NOT**?

TOAD in the HOLE with peas

Ingredients

- 2 tbsp vegetable oil
- 8 pork sausages
- 175g plain flour
- 3 medium eggs
- 225ml milk
- 1 tbsp thyme
- salt and black pepper
- frozen peas



2 Look at Jake and Matt's kitchen worktop. What do they have for the recipe? Use *some/any/not much/not many*. Talk to a partner.

There are some eggs. **There isn't much oil.**



3 8.7 Listen to Jake and Matt's conversation and write their shopping list. What do they want at the supermarket?

4 Complete their conversation with *some/any/a lot* and *much/many*.

Making a shopping list



M Mum's recipe for 'Toad in the Hole' looks easy.

J Good! Would you like me to help?

M It's OK. I like cooking. You can help make the shopping list.

J OK.

M Now, do we have [1]_____ eggs? And how [2]_____ milk and flour is there?

J Well, we have [3]_____ eggs, but not [4]_____, just two. How [5]_____ do we need?

M Three.

J OK, put eggs on the list.

M And milk? We need [6]_____ of milk.

J No problem. We have [7]_____. And we have [8]_____ of flour, too.

M Great! And vegetable oil? How [9]_____ oil is there?

J There's [10]_____, but not [11]_____. … Look!

M That'll do! What about herbs? Do we have [12]_____ thyme?

J I can't see [13]_____.

M OK, we need thyme. Now, what else?

J Sausages! They're very important. We have two, but they look really old and sad! How [14]_____ do we need?

M Eight! Put sausages on the list. Oh, and a large packet of frozen peas. Is that it?

J Yeah! So first the supermarket, then the cooking. I can't wait to try this!

8.7 Listen again and check. Practise the conversation.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 We use *many* with count nouns in questions and negatives.
How many eggs are there? There **aren't many**.
How many sausages are there? There aren't **any**.

2 We use *much* with uncount nouns in questions and negatives.
How much milk is there? There's **a lot**.
There isn't **much** vegetable oil.

3 In the positive we use *a lot of*.
We need **a lot of** milk.

Grammar reference 8.4 p146

Practice

much or *many*?

1 Complete the questions using *much* or *many*.

1 How _____ toast would you like?
2 How _____ ice cream do we have left?
3 How _____ people were at the wedding?
4 How _____ money do you have in your pocket?
5 How _____ petrol is there in the car?
6 How _____ children does your brother have?
7 How _____ days is it until your birthday?
8 How _____ time did you need for this exercise?

2 Choose an answer for each question in **1**.

a Just fifty p.
b It's tomorrow!
c Just one piece, please.
d Not a lot. Just some vanilla.
e Just three minutes.
f Two. A boy and a girl.
g About 150.
h It's full.

8.8 Listen and check. Practise with a partner.

Check it

3 Underline the correct word.

1 How much *sausages* / *sugar* would you like?
2 How many *eggs* / *butter* / *milk* do you need?
3 We don't have much *biscuits* / *cheese* / *potatoes* left.
4 I'm hungry. I'd like a *sandwich* / *bread* / *apple*.
5 I'd like *a* / *some* / *any* fruit, please.
6 I don't like *broccoli* / *an ice cream* / *some ham*.
7 Would you like some *tea* / *sandwich* / *vegetable*?
8 How many *money* / *cousins* / *family* do you have?
9 We have *no* / *much* / *many* homework today.

Talking about you

4 Look again at the photo and recipe for 'Toad in the Hole'.

- Do you think you would like it? Take a class vote!
- How do you think it is made? (Check the recipe on p150.)
- Do you have a favourite recipe? What ingredients do you need? Tell the class.

Go online for more **grammar** practice

Reading and speaking

We all love ice cream!

1 When did you last have an ice cream? What flavour was it? Do a quick survey! What's the class favourite?



2 8.9 Listen to and read *The History of Ice Cream*. Who are these people? What nationality are they? What is their connection to ice cream?

- Marco Polo
- Catherine de Medici and Henri II
- Charles I
- Lady Anne Fanshaw
- Procopio dei Coltelli
- Ronald Reagan

3 Read the text again. Work with a partner. The word 'first' appears five times in the article. Can you find each one? What do they refer to?

4 Find these dates. Why are they important in the history of ice cream.

200 BC	1293	1533
1665	1686	early 1700s
1930s	1946	1984

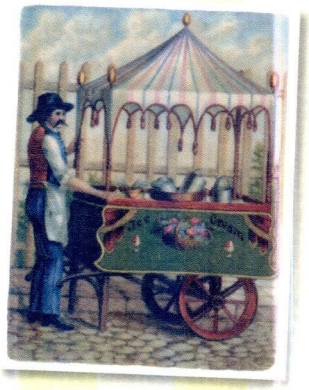
5 8.10 Now listen to and read *Some Amazing Facts*. Which surprise you? Which don't surprise you? Why? Discuss as a class.

In your own words

Use the countries in the headings to tell the story of ice cream to your partner in your own words.

THE HISTORY OF ICE CREAM

'WHO INVENTED ICE CREAM?'



There is no sure answer to this question. Perhaps it was the Chinese in 200 BC – they used ice to freeze rice with milk. Perhaps it was Alexander the Great, or the Roman Emperor Nero AD 37–68 – they both liked snow flavoured with fruit and honey.

13TH CENTURY CHINA > ITALY

In 1269, Marco Polo travelled to East Asia. He returned home 24 years later with many 'Marvels of the World', including a recipe for ice cream from China. So, the Italians became the first people in Europe to enjoy this luxury.

16TH – 17TH CENTURY ITALY > FRANCE > ENGLAND

Italian noblewoman, Catherine de Medici, was a great fan of ice cream. In 1533, she married Henri II of France and introduced him to the delicious dessert. Later, Charles I of England became an ice cream fan when his French chef made it for a royal banquet. He called it 'cream ice' and paid his chef £500 to keep the recipe secret. However, in 1665 it appeared in an English cookery book by Lady Anne Fanshaw. She called it 'Icy cream'.

For many years, ice cream was a luxury, enjoyed only by royalty and the rich. It wasn't until 1686 that ice cream first appeared on a restaurant menu. A Sicilian, Procopio dei Coltelli, opened the Café Procope in Paris and introduced Italian Gelato. It was made of milk, cream, butter and eggs – more like the ice cream we know today.



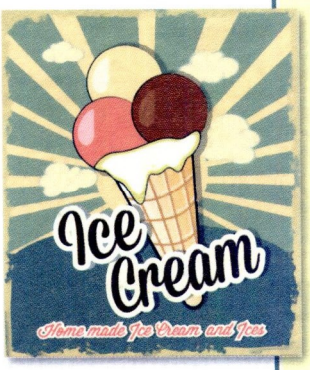
18TH – 21ST CENTURY AMERICA AND THE WORLD

We don't know exactly when ice cream arrived in America, but it was probably with European settlers in the early 1700s. We do know that the first advertisement appeared in the *New York Gazette* in 1777, and the first ice cream parlour opened in New York City in 1790. We also know that the first ice cream factory opened in Baltimore in 1851, but grocery shops didn't start selling it until the 1930s.

The popularity of ice cream grew and grew. In 1946*, the Americans celebrated victory in World War II with ice cream, and in 1984, US President Ronald Reagan made July 'National Ice Cream Month'.

*Although the war ended in 1945, food rationing didn't end until 1946.

ICE CREAM – SOME AMAZING FACTS



1 The most popular ice cream flavour is vanilla, followed by chocolate and strawberry.

2 Some of the most unusual flavours are toothpaste, fish & chips, garlic, and pizza.

3 President George Washington once spent $200 on ice cream (about $3,000 today!).

4 NASA says that ice cream is one of the things most missed by astronauts in space.

5 In the early days of TV, mashed potato was used in cooking shows because ice cream melted under the lights.

6 The busiest day for selling ice cream is Sunday.

7 Americans eat on average 27 litres of ice cream a year, but New Zealanders love it more. They eat 28 litres.



8 The US ice cream industry makes $21 billion a year.

Listening and speaking

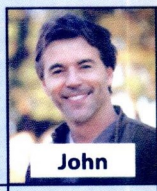
A meal to remember

1 8.11 Work with a partner. Listen to two people who have a special memory of a special meal. Which photo goes with **John's** meal? Which with **Alison's**?





2 8.11 Listen again. Answer the questions and complete the chart.





1 Where were they?		
2 When was it?		
3 What did they eat?		
4 Who did they eat with?		
5 Why was it so memorable?		

What do you think?

Work in small groups.

- Whose meal, John's or Alison's, do you think is most memorable. Why?
- What is a good meal you remember? Why? Where? When?
- What is the worst meal you remember? Why? Where? When?

Go online to watch a video and learn more about food from around the world.



Vocabulary and pronunciation

Daily needs

1 Match the words from the shopping list to the pictures.

8.12 Listen and repeat the words.

2 8.12 Listen again. Write the words you hear in the correct column.

●●	●●	●●●	●●●	●●●
aspirin				

3 You can buy all these things in a supermarket, but which High Street shop can you also buy them in?

newsagent's chemist's stationer's

You can buy batteries in a newsagent's or a stationer's.

Talking about you

Ask and answer questions with a partner about the things in the pictures.

When did you last buy some suncream?

When I went on holiday.

Where did you go?



Go online for more vocabulary practice

Everyday English

Shopping in the High Street

1 8.13 Listen and complete the conversations with the words in the boxes.

1 | sort too many all enough |

A I'd like some batteries, please.
B What _____ do you want?
A AA, please.
B Would you like a packet of four or six?
A Six is _____. Four is _____.
B Anything else?
A That's _____, thanks.

2 | too big large else |

C Have you got any baby shampoo, please?
D Yes, we have. Small or _____?
C The large is _____. The small is fine.
D Anything _____?
C No, thanks. How much is that?

3 | too much better only |

E I'm looking for a nice pen for a present.
F What about this one? It's £25.
E No, that's _____. I don't want to spend that much.
F Well, this one is £12.
E That's _____. And I need some pencils as well.
F There are ten pencils in this packet.
E But I _____ want two!
F I'm afraid I only have packets of ten. Sorry.

Go online for more **speaking** practice

2 Work in pairs. Learn two of the conversations. Act them in out front of the class.

3 Have similar conversations about other things on the shopping list on p86.

Sounding polite

4 8.14 Listen and look at these lines of conversation in a café. Which sound more polite?

I'd like a latte, please.
I want a hot chocolate.
Give me some cheesecake!
Can I have an egg sandwich, please?
Two cups of tea.
Could you bring me some ketchup?

5 Complete the conversation in a café.

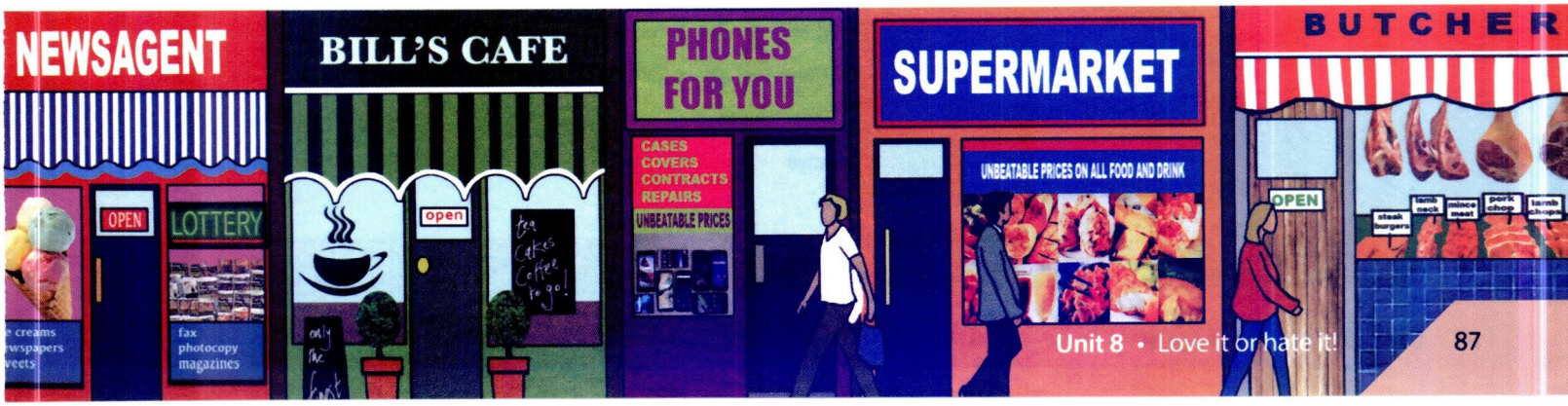
IN BILL'S CAFÉ

A Hi! What can I get you?
B *I'd like* a latte, please.
A Sure. To have in or take away?
B Have in.
A And what size do you want? Small, medium, or large?
B _____, please.
A Would you like anything to eat? A croissant? Some toast?
B _____ some toast, please.
A No problem.
B And _____ some honey with the toast?
A Of course. Take a seat and I'll bring it over.

8.15 Listen and compare.

6 Practise the conversation with a partner. Try to sound polite.

7 Have similar conversations in a café using different things to eat and drink.



Writing Formal/Informal writing

Two emails

1 **Tanya** is a student in Manchester. Her boyfriend, **Matt**, is a student in London. Read the email she wrote after visiting him. Answer the questions.

1 Did Tanya enjoy the weekend?
2 Is Matt a good cook?
3 Why does Tanya want the recipe?
4 How did Tanya travel back to Manchester?
5 Why did she sleep on the journey?
6 Why is Matt 'a star'?
7 When would she like to see Matt again?
8 Is the email formal or informal?
9 Did she visit Matt before or after their exams?

2 Tanya also stayed with Matt's parents for a weekend. Read her thank-you email. Answer the questions.

1 When did she visit his parents?
2 Was it the first time?
3 What did she do there?
4 Did she wait until after the exams to see Matt?

3 The email to Matt's parents is more formal than the email to Matt. Compare the beginnings and endings, then compare line by line. What other differences can you find?

4 **Write an informal thank-you email after a visit to a friend. Show it to a partner. Discuss ways you could change it to a more formal style.**



Go online for more writing practice

Subject: Last weekend **Date:** Mon 3 May
From: Tanya.vates4@chatchat.co.uk
To: matt.evans@garglemail.com

Hi Matt,

Thanks for last weekend. It was really great. The meal was fantastic – didn't know you could cook! Just kidding ;-). Email me the recipe. I'd like to make Toad in the Hole for my friends here – they're always starving hungry!

The journey was sooooooooooo long and boring – the coach stopped at a motorway service station where I had a disgusting cheese sandwich and a cold coffee. Yuk!

I slept for the rest of the journey – not surprising really – we did dance all night! House Rules was a brilliant club, but going to bed at four and getting up at eight to go back to Manchester was awful! You're a star for getting up early to take me to the coach station!

Everyone here is worried about the exams. They start next week, like yours. It was good to forget about them for the weekend! I miss you a lot. Come and visit me soon – it's cheap on the coach.

Can't wait to see you again. Email me or send a text.

Lots of love

Tanya

Xxx

Subject: Thank you **Date:** Mon 21 April
From: Tanya.vates4@chatchat.co.uk
To: evansandevans@gmail.uk

Dear Mr and Mrs Evans

I'd like to thank you so much for having me to stay last weekend. I had a really lovely time, and I was so pleased to meet you at last. The meal you made was delicious. Matt told me his mother was an excellent cook – and he was right. I also enjoyed our walk – the countryside and woods near your house are beautiful.

The journey back was long and I slept for most of the way. It was very kind of you to drive me to the station so early in the morning. I was very grateful!

It's good to be back at university. I have a lot of work at the moment before the exams start. I know Matt has exams too, so we can't see each other until the end of June – we are just too busy!

I'd love to visit again in the summer holidays with Matt.

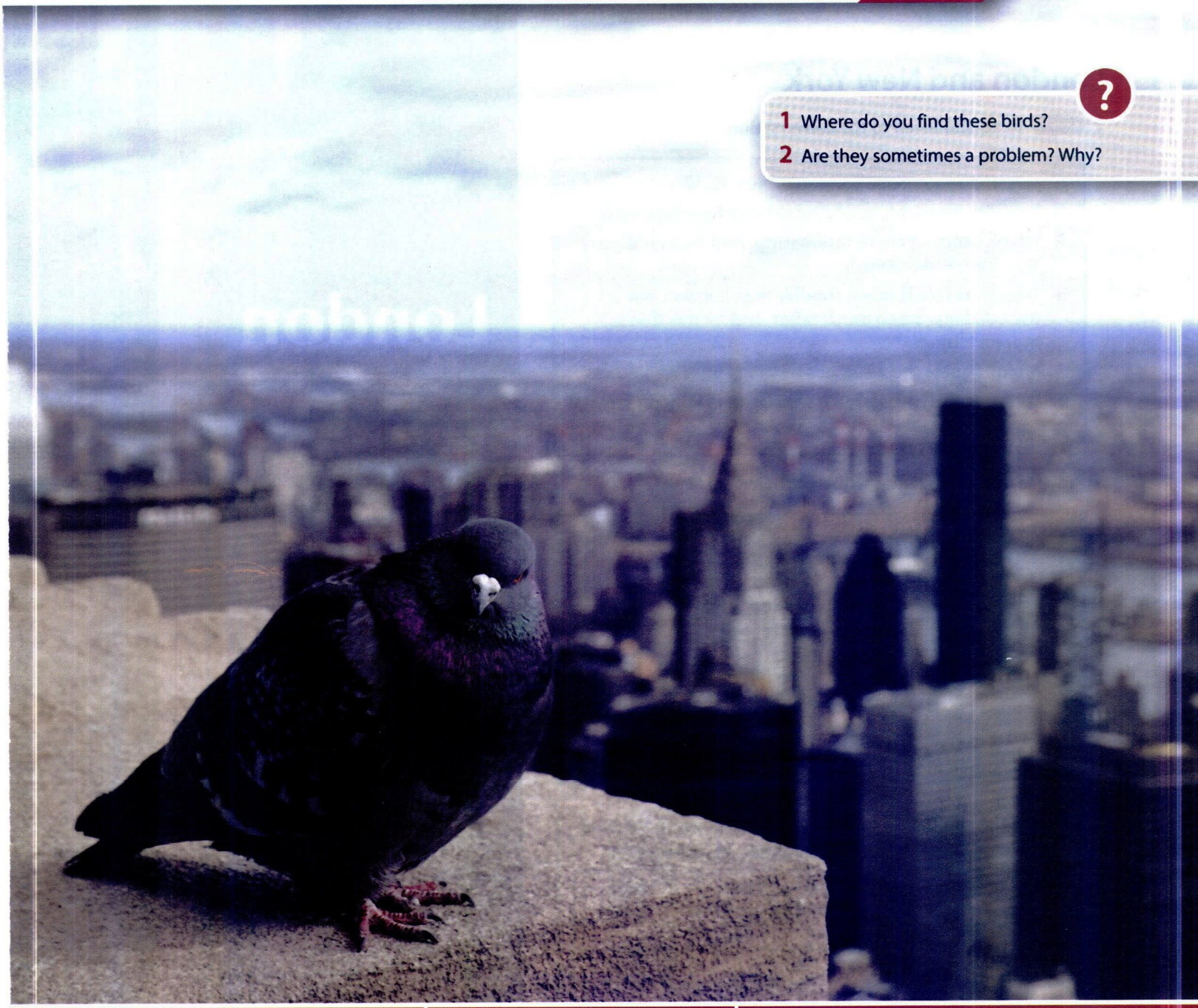
Thank you again for everything.

Best wishes,

Tanya

Life in the city 9

- **Grammar** Comparatives & superlatives, *have got*
- **Vocabulary** Town and country
- **Everyday English** Directions
- **Reading** Life at the top
- **Listening** An American in London
- **Writing** Describing a place



1 Where do you find these birds?
2 Are they sometimes a problem? Why?

Watch the video introduction online

Use your **Workbook** for self study

Go online for more practice and to *Check your Progress*

Grammar Comparative adjectives

STARTER

1 Work with a partner. Think of a town or city in your country. Say where it is.

It's in the north / east / south / west
... on the coast / near ... / on the River ...

2 9.1 Listen to the sentences. Which sentences are about **London**? Which are about **New York**?

9.2 Listen and check.

London and New York

1 9.3 Read and listen to the conversation.

A Which do you prefer, London or New York?
B Well, I'm American, so of course I love New York more.
A I think London's **more interesting**. And it's a lot **bigger** than New York.
B True, New York is much **smaller** than London. But the buildings are so much **taller**, and for me, that's **more exciting**!
A Mmm. I guess the weather's **better** in New York.
B Well, people think so, but it's **worse** than London for rain!
A Really?!

Practise the conversation with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 We make regular comparative adjectives by adding *-er*, or using *more*. Write the comparative forms.

big *bigger* exciting _____
small _____ interesting _____

When do we add *-er*? When do we use *more*?

2 Some adjectives are irregular.

good *better* bad _____

Grammar reference 9.1 p147

2 What are the comparative forms of the adjectives in the box?

tall – taller **wet – wetter** **beautiful – more beautiful**

tall	expensive	cheap	hot	cold
wet	nice	friendly	crowded	polite
beautiful	old	good	bad	

Work with a partner. Test each other on the comparative forms.

Cheap ... **Cheaper!**



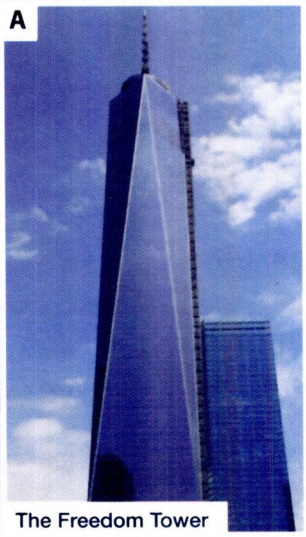


3 Look at the photos. Which are of New York, and which are London? Work with a partner and compare the two cities. Use *I think* … and the adjectives in brackets.

I think the Freedom Tower is taller than the Shard, but I think the Shard is more beautiful.

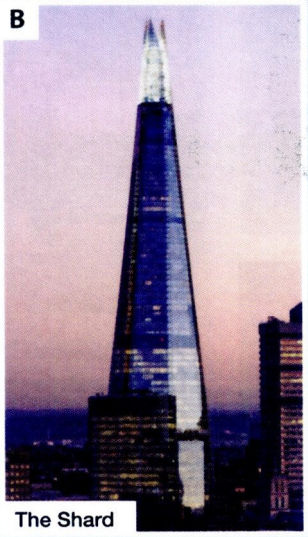
- The Shard / The Freedom Tower (*tall, beautiful*)
- the Subway / the Underground (*expensive/cheap, crowded*)
- the parks (*big, nice*)
- weather (*hot, cold, wet, sunny*)
- the people (*friendly, polite*)

A



The Freedom Tower

B

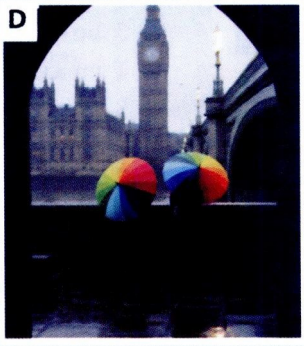


The Shard

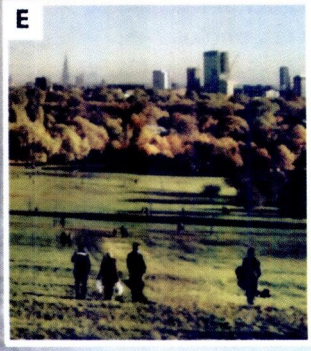
C



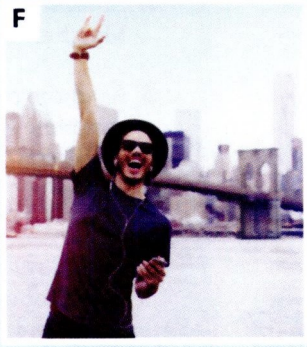
D



E



F



9.4 Listen and compare your ideas.

Go online for more **grammar** practice

Listening



4 9.5 Listen to **Larry** from New York, who lives and works in London. Which things does he think are better in New York, and which in London?

1 New York is ***easier*** to walk around, because it's ***smaller***.
2 The Underground is _____ than the Subway. It's much _____, but it is _____ _____.
3 There are a lot of _____ buildings in London, so it's kind of _____ _____.
4 It's a lot _____ in New York … Winters are _____ here in London, but they're so grey!
5 Americans are _____ to strangers than the British.
6 Life is _____ in New York, though, and Londoners are probably _____ _____.

5 9.5 Listen again and complete the sentences.

Practice

Comparing cities

1 Complete the conversations using the comparative form of the adjectives.

1 **A** New York is ***older*** than London. (old)
B No, it isn't! New York is much ***more modern***! (modern)

2 **A** Tokyo is _____ than Bangkok. (cheap)
B No, it isn't! Tokyo is much _____! (expensive)

3 **A** Amsterdam is _____ than Paris. (big)
B No, it isn't! Amsterdam is much _____! (small)

4 **A** Johannesburg is _____ than Cape Town. (safe)
B No, it isn't! Johannesburg is much _____ _____! (dangerous)

5 **A** The traffic in Mexico City is _____ than in São Paulo. (good)
B No, it isn't! It's much _____! (bad)

9.6 Listen and check.

2 Work with a partner. Practise the conversations in **1**. Notice the stress and intonation.

New York is much more modern!

Talking about you

3 Work in small groups. Compare two cities you know.
… is bigger than … **… is more expensive than …**

A 'Brit' in New York *have got*

1 9.7 Listen to **Gemma**. Where is she from? Where does she live and work? Is she married?

2 9.7 Listen again and complete the lines from the conversation. Practise them with a partner.

I ♥ New York!



I *Have* you both *got* jobs here?
G Yes, I _____ _____ a really good job. I work for a fashion company.
I _____ Luke _____ a good job, too?
G Yes, he _____ _____ a wonderful job!
I _____ you _____ an apartment?
G Yes, we _____ _____ a lovely apartment in Brooklyn.
I So, you _____ _____ a car here?
G No, we _____. We _____ a car in Manchester.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 *Have* and *have got* both express possession. We use *have got* more in spoken British English. *Have* is more usual in American English.
I **have** a good job. = "I**'ve got** a good job."
Do you **have** a nice apartment? = "**Have** you **got** a nice apartment?"
She **doesn't have** a car. = "She **hasn't got** a car."

2 The past of *have* and *have got* is *had*.
We **haven't got** a car here. → We **had** a car in Manchester.

Grammar reference 9.2 p147

3 Rewrite the sentences with *have got*.

1 I have a nice car.
2 We have three children.
3 He has a business in south London.
4 Do you have a lot of friends?
5 How many brothers and sisters do you have?
6 I don't have any brothers. I have a sister called Emily.
7 Jack doesn't have a sister.
8 Do we have any homework today?

9.8 Listen and check. Say the sentences with *have got*.

I've got a bigger house than you!

4 Work with a partner. Imagine you're both film stars. Who's got the best house?

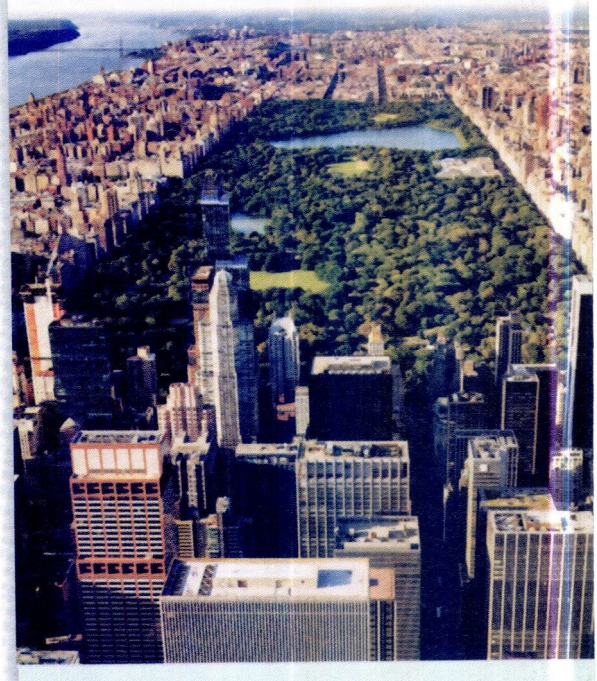
Student A Look at p151.

Student B Look at p153.

I've got a bigger house than you!
I don't think so! I've got 10 bedrooms!
Huh! Well, I've got 8 bedrooms on the 1st floor, and ...

New York's biggest park

Superlative adjectives



1 Read the introduction to **New York's Central Park** and complete the chart.

Adjective	Superlative
1 big	*the biggest*
2 old	_____
3 busy	_____
4 amazing	_____
5 popular	_____
6 good	_____

What are the rules?
What are the comparative forms?

Grammar reference 9.1 p147

2 Look at the names of the places. Match them with photos 1–6.

3 Read the rest of the text and complete it with the adjectives in the superlative.

9.9 Listen and check.

4 Take turns to tell a partner what's special about the park and the things in it.

Central Park **It's America's oldest and biggest city park.**
Bow Bridge **It's ...**

NEW YORK'S CENTRAL PARK

Central Park is one of the most amazing sights in the world – an enormous swimming pool of green surrounded by skyscrapers! CENTRAL PARK is America's oldest and biggest city park, and the most popular. It appears in more than 350 movies! It's busiest on Sundays, with nearly ¼ million visitors, so try and find a quieter time to visit. Here's a guide to some of the best things to see.

Bow Bridge is one of the [1]_____ (***beautiful***) old iron bridges in the world. Perhaps you recognize it – it's the [2]_____ (***popular***) movie location in the park.

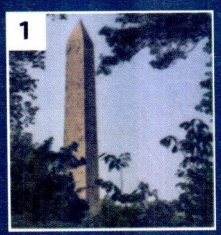
The Carousel is the [3]_____ (***large***) in North America. With its 58 brightly-coloured horses, it's obviously a favourite with children.

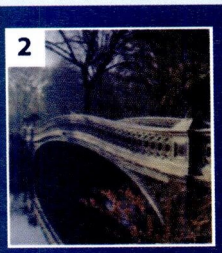
Wollman Ice Rink The [4]_____ (***wonderful***) thing you can do on a winter's evening is go ice-skating here. You can skate to the music under the skyscrapers and stars!

Cleopatra's Needle is definitely the [5]_____ (***old***) thing in the park – it's from Egypt and is 3½ thousand years old!

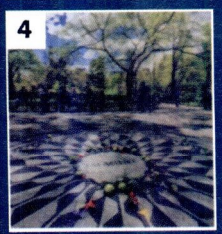
Belvedere Castle is the [6]_____ (***high***) point in the park, so you can get the [7]_____ (***good***) views from here.

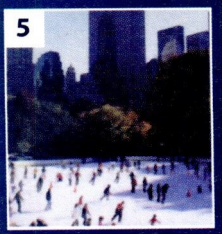
Strawberry Fields is a garden named after one of the [8]_____ (***famous***) Beatles' songs. John Lennon lived and died in New York. The *Imagine* mosaic here is in memory of him.

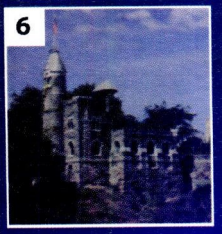

1


2


3


4


5


6

Practice

It's the biggest!

1 Complete these sentences with a superlative adjective.

1 The ***tallest*** building in Europe is the Federation Tower in Moscow. It's 374 metres.

2 The _____ hotel in London is the Lanesborough. The Royal Suite there costs £27,000 per night!

3 The world's _____ car park is at the West Edmonton Mall in Canada. It has 20,000 spaces.

4 The _____ tourist attraction is the Las Vegas Strip. It has 40 million visitors a year.

5 The _____ city in the world is Ahwaz, in Iran. The _____ temperature ever reached there was 54°C.

6 The _____ city is Jericho in the Palestinian Territories. It dates back 11,000 years.

9.10 Listen and check. Make sentences about your town or city.

Making comparisons

2 Complete the sentences with an opposite comparative adjective.

1 The music's too **loud**. Can we go somewhere ***quieter***?

2 The 10.00 train is too **slow**. There's a _____ one at 10.20.

3 You're **late**! Why weren't you here _____ ?

4 £200 a night is too **expensive**. Have you got any _____ rooms?

5 This flat is too **far** from the city centre. I need somewhere _____ .

6 This exercise is **easy**. Can I do something _____?

Check it

3 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

1 ☐ Yesterday was more hot than today.
☐ Yesterday was hotter than today.

2 ☐ She's taller than her brother.
☐ She's taller that her brother.

3 ☐ I am the most young person in the class.
☐ I am the youngest person in the class.

4 ☐ This exercise is most difficult in the book.
☐ This exercise is the most difficult in the book.

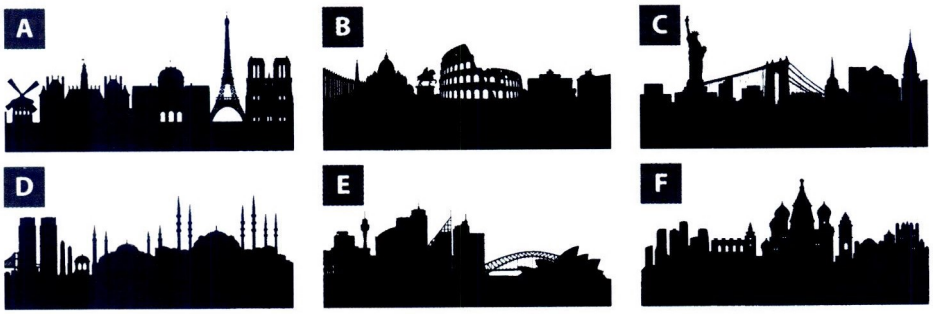
5 ☐ I've got three sisters.
☐ I got three sisters.

6 ☐ She hasn't got a good job.
☐ She no got a good job.

Reading and speaking Life at the top

1 Look at the skylines and match them with the cities. Do you know the names of any of the buildings? Which city do you think has the tallest skyscrapers?

Istanbul	Rome	Sydney	New York	Paris	Moscow



2 Read the introduction to the article and answer the questions.

1 What's the difference between skyscrapers today and in the past?
2 What kind of people want to live in skyscrapers these days?
3 What makes living in skyscrapers easier nowadays?

3 Work in two groups.

Group A: Read about Roz Kaldor-Aroni and Eureka Tower.
Group B: Read about Mike Palumbo and Water Tower Place.

Answer the questions.

1 Where did they live when they were younger?
2 How tall is the skyscraper they live in? Do they live near the top of it?
3 Are there any taller skyscrapers near theirs?
4 Are they scared of heights?
5 What do they love about living there?
6 What are the disadvantages?

4 Find a partner from the other group. Ask and answer the questions in **3**.

5 Work with the same partner. Look again at the texts and answer these questions.

Roz Kaldor-Aroni
1 What's more important than the apartment to Roz?
2 Why doesn't she get bored with the view?
3 Why did Gideon think his friend's garden was a park?

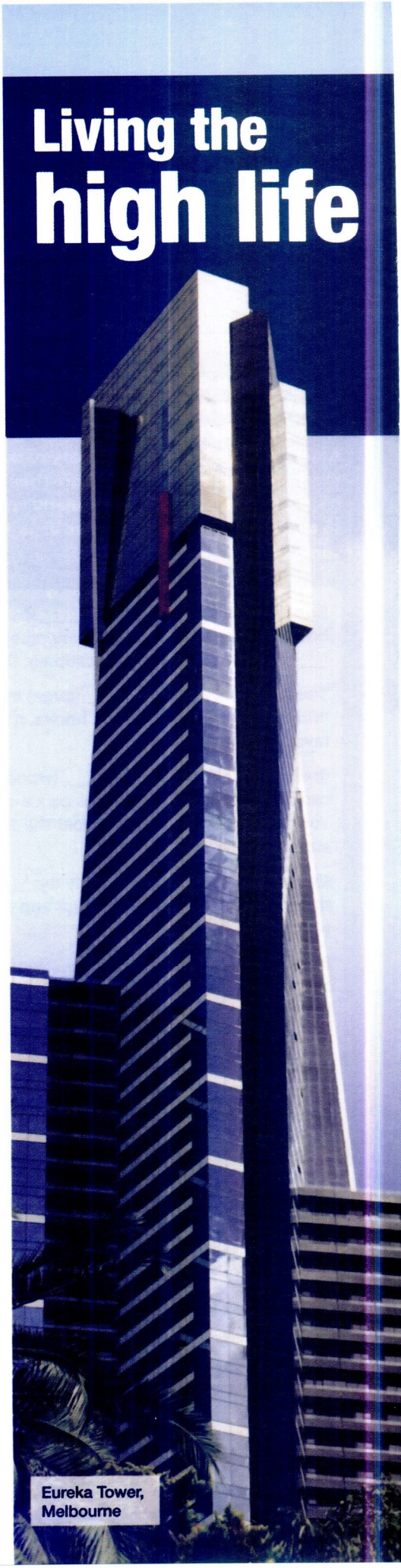
Mike Palumbo
1 Why did he like being in the city as a boy?
2 Why didn't he want to work in Wall Street?
3 Why does it take him and Veronica a long time to leave their apartment?

What do you think?

- Would you like to live in skyscraper? Why/Why not?
- What can you see from your window at home? Is it a good view?
- What's your favourite tall building in the world? Why do you like it?

Go online to watch a video and learn about what it is like to live in a big city.





Once skyscrapers around the world were full of offices, not apartments. In 2000, only three buildings higher than 200m had apartments in them. Today there are more than 250, many of them luxury apartments for rich people who want to live the high life.

Better technology makes life at the top easier. Lifts can now travel much faster, more than 40 mph. Also, the buildings don't move so much in the wind any more.

So, what's it like to live on top of the world?

A Roz Kaldor-Aroni, 54, Eureka Tower, Melbourne, Australia

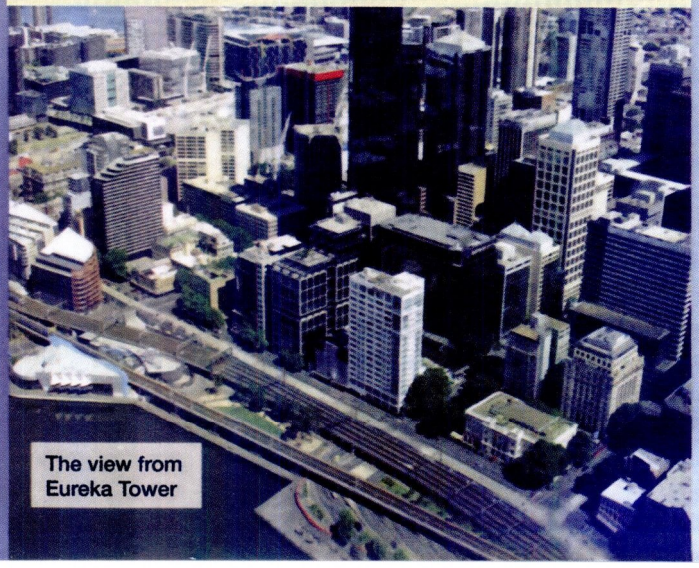


Roz Kaldor-Aroni is CEO of a medical research charity. She and her husband lived in another skyscraper before they moved into the 91 floor Eureka Tower in 2006. At nearly 300m, it was then the world's tallest apartment block. They live on one of the highest floors of the building, with their son, Gideon, and Roz loves it. It's not because of the apartment itself, she says: 'It's very much about looking outside. It's not about the inside.' She never gets bored with the view. 'Every time I look out of the window it looks different – I notice something new.' They are building an even taller block of apartments nearby. 'We will lose part of our view', says Roz, 'but we can't really complain.'

When she's ready to drive Gideon to school, Roz doesn't listen to traffic reports. 'I just look out of the window,' she says. 'I have two ways we can go, and I can see the traffic from here and take the better one.' There's no need to check the weather, either – you can see where the clouds are. But you can't see the ground when the clouds are low!

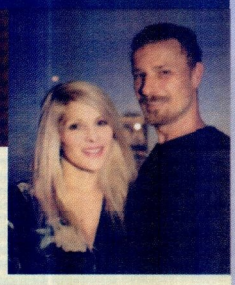
Nature can seem a long way away, but it's only a three-minute walk to the park. 'When Gideon was little,' Roz says, 'he came back from a friend's and said, "Mummy, we played in the park", and I said, "No, that was their garden!"'

The family are fine with heights, but visitors sometimes find it more difficult. 'We had one babysitter who was so stressed out, she couldn't come back.' And people's ears often pop on the journey up, just like in an aeroplane!



The view from Eureka Tower

B Mike Palumbo, 50, Water Tower Place, Chicago, US



Mike Palumbo was born in the suburbs of Chicago. However, when he went to school in the centre of the city, he felt at more home there. 'I loved it', he says. He often looked up at the 343-metre John Hancock Tower and dreamed of living in a place like that one day.

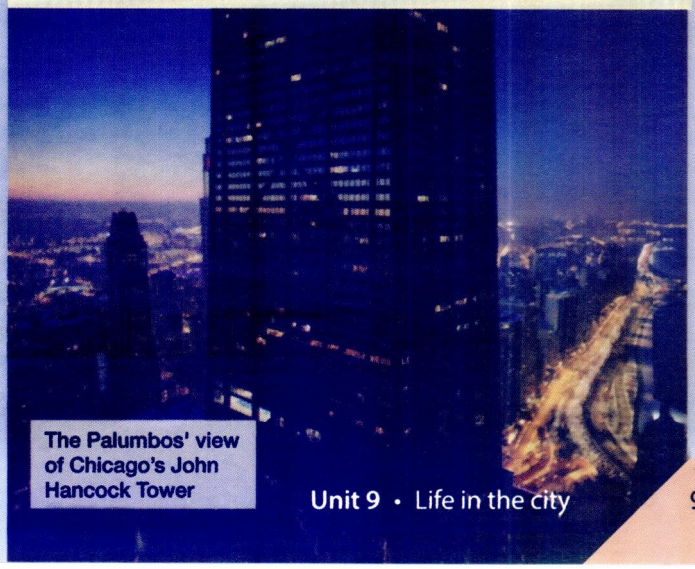
When Mike became a financial trader, he made a lot of money on the money markets, so he bought an apartment in a 262-metre skyscraper, opposite John Hancock Tower!

The 8-bedroom apartment is on the 64th floor of Water Tower Place, which has 74 floors. Mike lives there with his wife, Veronica, and they look down on most of the other skyscrapers around.

Mike got job offers from Wall Street in New York, but he never wanted to leave Chicago. 'I just love this view', he says. 'When I wake up in the morning, the first thing I do is open the blinds and let the sun come in. It doesn't get any better.'

Believe it or not, Mike is scared of heights, but he's OK with them through windows! When he sees a team of window cleaners outside, he always thinks, 'I would not want that job!'

The 64th floor is obviously not the easiest place to have small children, but amazingly, Mike and Veronica have twins! It can take a long time to get everybody and everything into the lift. Are there any other disadvantages to living there? 'I'm a dog lover', says Mike, 'but there are people who don't want them in the building.'



The Palumbos' view of Chicago's John Hancock Tower

Vocabulary and listening

Town and country



1 Look at the postcards of **Tadchester** and **Longdale**. Which is a town? Which is a village?

2 Find the words in the boxes in photos 1–24.

Tadchester

- [6] square
- [ ] stadium
- [ ] statue
- [ ] market
- [ ] street
- [ ] bank
- [ ] town hall
- [ ] museum
- [ ] office block
- [ ] castle
- [ ] shopping centre
- [ ] cathedral

Longdale

- [ ] field
- [ ] farm
- [ ] wood
- [ ] bridge
- [ ] church
- [ ] pub
- [ ] path
- [ ] river
- [ ] cottage
- [ ] hill
- [ ] post box
- [ ] lake

3 Complete the sentences with town and country words in **2**.

1 A town is bigger than a ***village***.
2 A cathedral is bigger than a _____.
3 A _____ is smaller than a house.
4 Bridges often go over _____.
5 Farmers grow things in their _____.
6 There's a _____ of Queen Victoria in front of the railway station.
7 The mayor has an office in the _____ _____.
8 Markets are often in the town _____.
9 I've got a postcard to send. Is there a _____ _____ near here?
10 We walked along a _____ through a lovely _____, full of oak trees.

4 Work in pairs. Try to get your partner to say one of the words in **2**.

You can see old things in here. **A museum!**

Talking about you

5 Work in small groups. Talk about the things in **2** in the town or village you live in, or often visit.

I live in the village of Prešov in Slovakia. There's an amazing statue of an angel in front of the church. I love walking by the river.

Go online for more **vocabulary** practice

Everyday English Directions

1 Look at the satnav map of **Sherford**. Where are these things?
The roundabout is next to the lake.

a roundabout	traffic lights	a pedestrian crossing
a car park	a train station	a traffic sign



2 9.11 Listen and complete the **satnav** directions to the petrol station. Use the prepositions.

over	up	under	~~along~~	through	on
at	down	onto	past		

> Continue [1] along George Street, [2]_____ the Bristol Hotel and [3]_____ the bridge. [4]_____ the roundabout, take the first exit on the left and drive [5]_____ Park Hill. In 200 yards, at the junction, turn right [6]_____ Bagley Wood Road. Continue [7]_____ the hill along Bagley Wood Road and [8]_____ the wood. Drive [9]_____ the railway bridge and the destination is [10]_____ your right – Sherford Petrol Station.

Listening

3 9.12 Go back to the starting point. Listen to the directions. Where do you finish?

1 _____ 2 _____
3 _____

4 Work in pairs. Start from the castle. Ask for and give directions to:

- the station
- the town hall
- the school
- the church
- a bank
- the museum

Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to ... ?

Could you give me directions to ... , please?

5 Give directions to places in your town from your school.

Go out of the school and turn right, and ...

Go online for more **speaking** practice

Writing Describing a place

Relative pronouns *which, who,* and *where*

1 Read about the relative pronouns *which*, *who* and *where*.

GRAMMAR SPOT

We can use *which*, *who* and *where* to join sentences. Complete the rules with the words **places, things, or people.**

- We use ***which*** for _____.
  I had a guide book. **It** was really useful.
  I had a guide book, **which** was really useful
- We use ***where*** for _____.
  That's Buckingham Palace. The Queen lives **in it.**
  That's Buckingham Palace, **where** the Queen lives.
- We use ***who*** for _____.
  I'd like you to meet Andrea. **She** lives in the same street as me.
  I'd like you to meet Andrea, **who** lives in the same street as me.

2 Join the sentences with *which*, *who* or *where*.

1 We're staying at The Old Parsonage. It is my favourite hotel.
2 We went to Amsterdam. My brother lives there.
3 We met the hotel owner. He was very friendly.
4 I've got a new car. It's much faster than my old one.
5 We went to Paris. I asked my girlfriend to marry me there!

3 Read about London and complete the text using the words in the box.

a where the Queen lives
b which has 25 million people
c which is the biggest
d who loves going to
e where the Romans landed
f where you can buy almost anything
g which costs £11.50 a day,
h where you can see

4 Write four paragraphs about your capital city. Begin each paragraph with the same words as in the text about London. Write 100–150 words.

Paragraph 1 How big is it? Where is it?
Paris has a population of ...
Paragraph 2 What is it famous for?
Paragraph 3 Does it have any problems?
Paragraph 4 What do you like best about it?

Go online for more **writing** practice



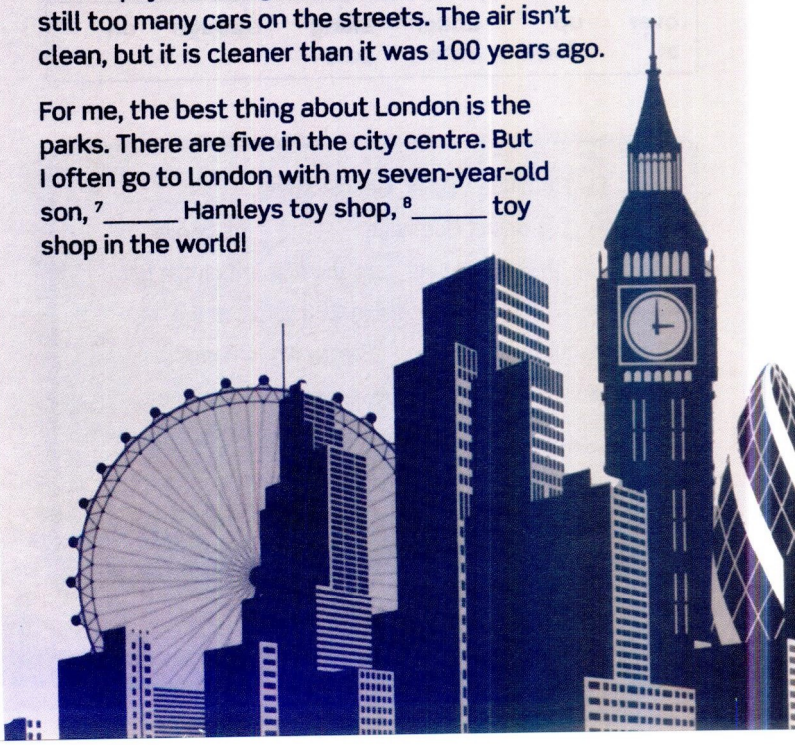
MY CAPITAL CITY

London has a population of about nine million people. It lies on the River Thames, [1]_____ nearly 2,000 years ago. From about 1800 until World War II, London was the biggest city in the world, but now it's Shanghai, [2]_____.

London is famous for many things. Tourists come from all over the world to visit its historic buildings, such as Buckingham Palace, [3]_____, and the Houses of Parliament, [4]_____ and hear the famous clock, Big Ben. They also come to visit its theatres, its museums and its many shops, such as Harrods, [5]_____. And of course they want to ride on the London Eye, next to the river!

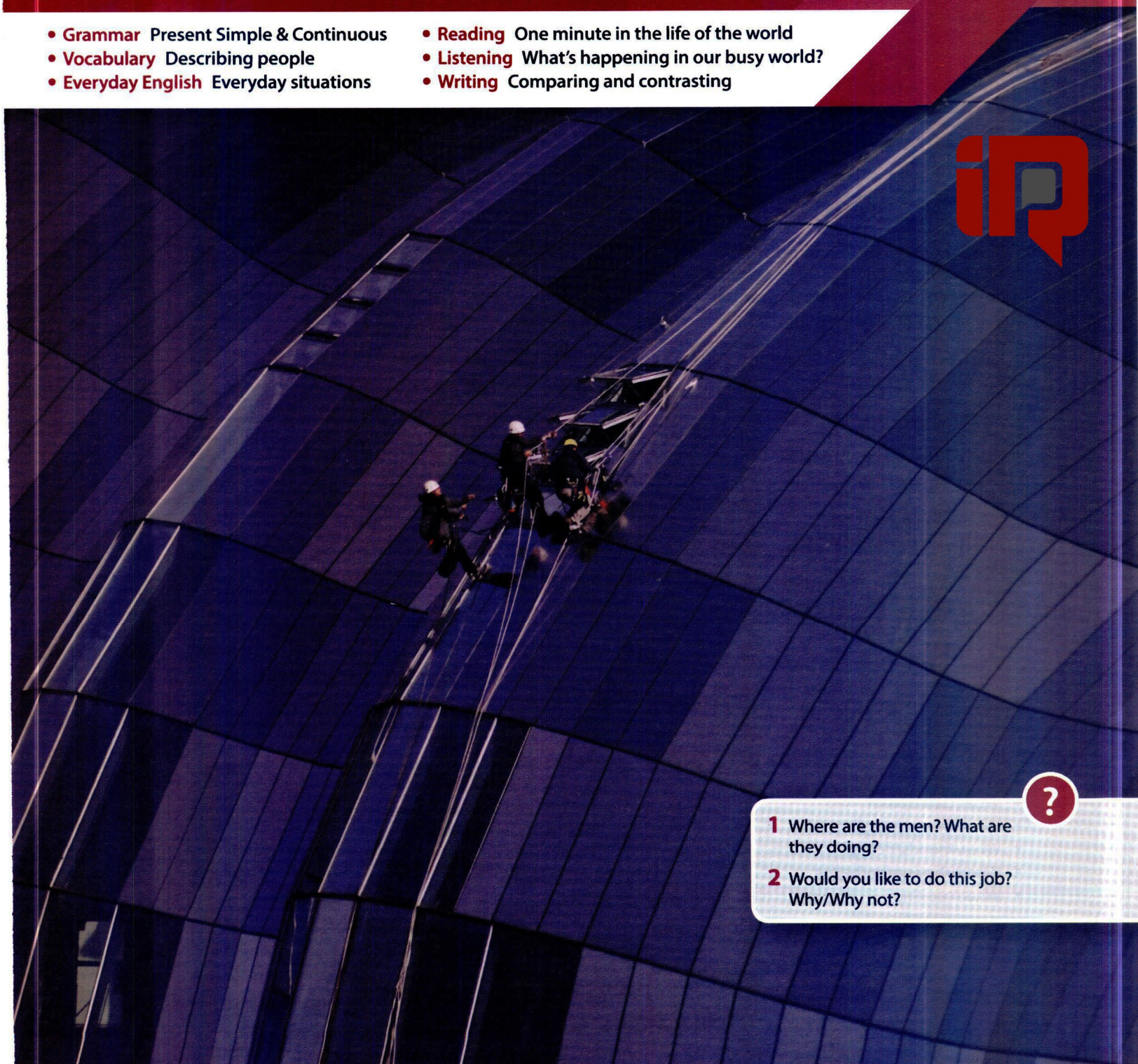
Like many big cities, London has problems with traffic and pollution. Around four million people use the London Underground on its busiest days. Car drivers in the city centre pay the Congestion Charge, [6]_____, but there are still too many cars on the streets. The air isn't clean, but it is cleaner than it was 100 years ago.

For me, the best thing about London is the parks. There are five in the city centre. But I often go to London with my seven-year-old son, [7]_____ Hamleys toy shop, [8]_____ toy shop in the world!



What are you up to? 10

- **Grammar** Present Simple & Continuous
- **Vocabulary** Describing people
- **Everyday English** Everyday situations
- **Reading** One minute in the life of the world
- **Listening** What's happening in our busy world?
- **Writing** Comparing and contrasting



1 Where are the men? What are they doing?

2 Would you like to do this job? Why/Why not?

Watch the video introduction online

Use your **Workbook** for self study

Go online for more practice and to *Check your Progress*

Grammar Present Continuous

STARTER

Which preposition goes with these places?

Preposition	Place	
at	holiday	home
in	the bus	bed
on	work	the bus stop
	my car	my way home
	school	

I'm just phoning to …

1 10.1 Look at the photos and listen to the conversation. Who are **Colin** and **Millie**? Where are they? What time is it? What's the problem?

2 Complete the sentences about the people. What are they doing?

1 MILLIE

She *'s phoning* her parents.

She _____ to her dad. (talk)

2 MILLIE'S PARENTS

Her dad is in bed, but he _____ not _____.

Her mum _____ still _____.

3 MILLIE'S FRIENDS

They _____ a barbecue.

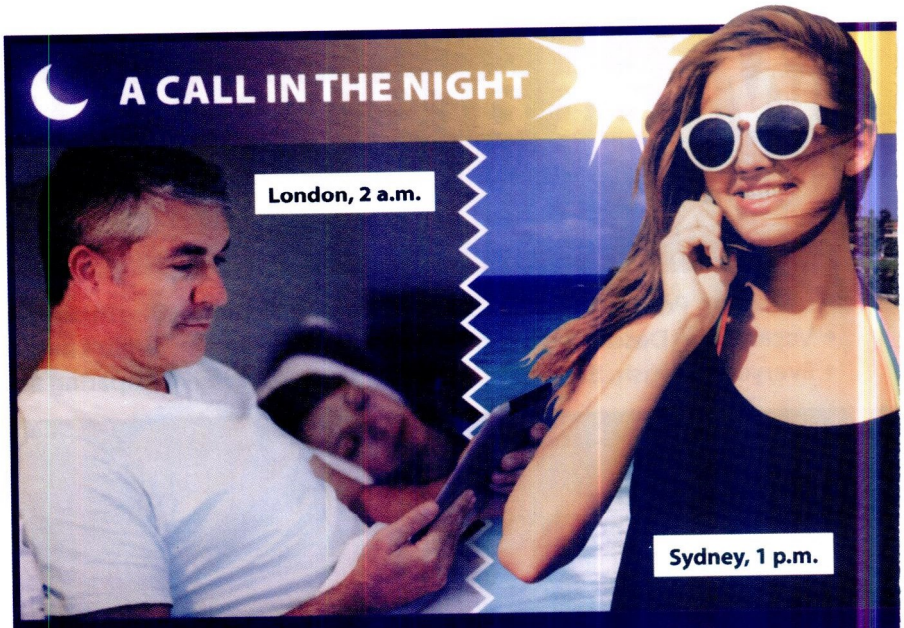
They _____ steak and sausages.

3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer these questions about the people.

- What/doing?
- Why/phoning?
- What/dad/doing?
- What/mum/doing?
- What/friends/doing?
- Where/having/barbecue
- What/cooking?

What's Millie doing? **She's …**

10.2 Listen and check.



Colin Who … ?

Millie It's me Dad!

Colin Oh … Millie! Millie, are you all right?

Millie Hi Dad, **I'm** just **phoning** to see how you and Mum are!

Colin Millie, we're fine but it's two o'clock in the morning here. We're in bed, sleeping – well, **I'm not sleeping** now!

Millie Oh, sorry Dad! I forgot … the time difference!

Colin Sssh – **your mum's still sleeping. How are you doing**? Is everything OK?

Millie It's great. It's lunchtime here in Oz – **we're having** a barbecue on the beach. **We're cooking** steak and sausages.

Colin That's wonderful, honey … but I'm so tired. I'll call you tomorrow morning – eight o'clock our time and seven your time. OK?

OK Dad! Love you!

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 The **Present Continuous** (*to be* + *-ing*) describes activities happening **now**. Complete the chart.

I	*am*	
You		**learning** English.
He/She		**sitting** in the classroom.
We		**listening** to the teacher.
They		

What are the questions and the negatives?

2 What's the difference between these sentences?

She **speaks** Spanish. She's **speaking** Spanish.

Grammar reference 10.1–10.2 p147

Practice

Questions and negatives

1 Read the **two** conversations and complete them with words from the box.

I'm just phoning (x2)	they're staying	She's not feeling
where are you going	I'm just doing	I'm just packing
Am I disturbing	I'm trying	

ON A TRAIN



Tony Hi, Mum!

Mum Hi, Tony! Where are you?

Tony I'm on the train. _____ a bit of work on my laptop.

Mum Oh, _____?

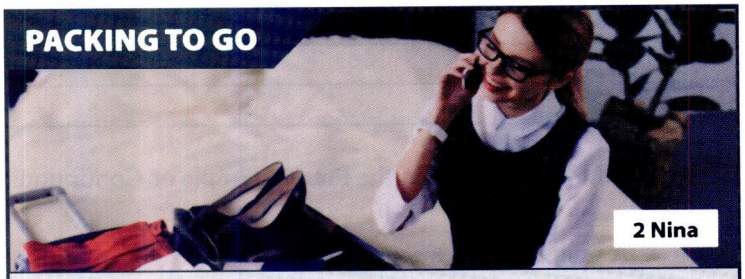
Tony I'm going to Birmingham for the day to see some friends – you know, Ed and Kay.

Mum Oh, yes! Do they live in Birmingham?

Tony No, they don't, but _____ with Ed's mum at the moment. _____ very well.

Mum Oh dear! I hope she's better soon. Well, _____ to see how you are …

PACKING TO GO



Nina Jane!

Jane Hi, Nina! _____ you?

Nina No, no! You're not. _____ for Dubai. _____ to decide which clothes to take.

Jane So, what's the temperature in Dubai at the moment?

Nina 34 degrees!

Jane Phew! Well, _____ to wish you 'good luck' and 'bon voyage'!

Nina Thanks, Jane. I'm really nervous.

Jane You'll be great. You always speak so well at conferences.

Nina Thanks, Jane.

10.3 Listen and check. Work with your partner and practise the conversations.

2 Look at the answers. Write the questions with the verbs.



10.4 Listen and check.

3 10.5 Listen to five false sentences about the pictures. Correct them.

'She's reading a magazine.'

She isn't reading a magazine.
She's reading a detective story.

Talking about you

4 Write sentences that are true for you at the moment.

1 It/rain. **It isn't raining. It's snowing!**
2 We/all wear jeans.
3 I/sit at the front of the class.
4 The teacher/ask us questions.
5 We/work hard.
6 My partner/look out of the window.
7 I/wear/T-shirt.

5 Look out of the classroom window. What can you see and hear? What's happening?

A man is running down the street.

Present Simple and Continuous Who's who at the art exhibition?

1 10.6 Look at the picture of the art exhibition. Listen to a man and a woman talking about the people there. Write the names of the people in the boxes.



2 10.6 Listen again and complete the table.

	What are they doing?	What do they do?
Eric	He's standing in front of the window.	He has an art shop in New York. He often visits London.
Charlotte		
Helena		
Anton		
Leon and Peter		

3 Complete the questions about the people. Then ask and answer them with a partner.

1 Where ***does*** **Eric** ***come*** from? *New York.*
Who is he _____ to? *Charlotte.*

2 What _____ **Charlotte** _____? *She's a professor.*
What _____ she _____? *She's laughing at Eric's joke.*

3 What _____ **Helena** _____? *Champagne.*
What _____ she _____? *Stories for children.*

4 What _____ **Anton** _____? *A big black hat.*
Where _____ he _____? *Paris.*

5 Where _____ **Leon** and **Peter** _____?
In Bond Street in London.
What _____ they _____ at? *Anton's painting.*

10.7 Listen and check.

4 Put the verb in **bold** in the Present Simple or Continuous.

wear

1 A police officer ***wears*** a uniform.
2 Why ***are*** you ***wearing*** that funny hat? You look silly!

work

3 My father _____ for an IT company.
4 I _____ very hard at the moment. I need the money.

go

5 I always _____ to bed about midnight.
6 Why _____ you _____ to bed now? It's only 9.00!

do/make

7 Shh! I _____ my homework. You _____ too much noise!
8 Pete's a businessman. He _____ a lot of work in the States. He _____ a lot of money!

Whose is it?

1 Look again at the picture of the art exhibition and find these things.

a black hat	a bow tie
a green bag	a brochure
pair of black glasses	a pink scarf
a glass of champagne	

2 10.8 Listen to the questions and complete the answers with the name and *his*, *hers*, or *theirs*.

1 Whose is the black hat?
It's ***Anton's***. (It's _____.)

2 Whose are the glasses?
They're _____. (They're _____.)

3 Whose is the brochure?
It's _____ and _____. (It's _____.)

Ask and answer about the other things with a partner.

3 Give something of yours to the teacher. The teacher will ask questions about the objects. Answer using the possessive pronouns.

mine	yours	his	hers	ours	theirs

Whose jacket is this? **It's hers ... it's Tina's.**

Is it yours, Tina? **Yes, it's mine.**

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the table.

Subject	Object	Possessive adjective	Possessive pronoun
I	me	my	mine
You	you		
He		his	
She	her		hers
We		our	ours
They	them		

2 *Whose ... ?* asks about possession.
Whose hat is this?
Whose is this hat? It's mine. = It's my hat.
Whose is it?

3 Careful!
Who's your teacher? Who's = Who is

Grammar reference 10.3 p147

Practice

yours and *mine*

1 Choose the correct word. Compare your answers with a partner. Read them aloud.

1 *Your / Yours* house is bigger than *my / mine*.
2 Do you like *their / theirs* house better than *his / him*?
3 *Your / Yours* garden is smaller than *their / theirs*.
4 *My / Mine* children are older than *her / hers*.
5 This book isn't *my / mine*. Is it *your / yours*?
6 *Whose / Who's* dictionary is this? Is it *his / him*?
7 *Whose / Who's* talking to *your / yours* sister?
8 *Whose / Who's* going to *her / hers* party tonight?
9 *Whose / Who's* dog is that in *our / ours* garden?

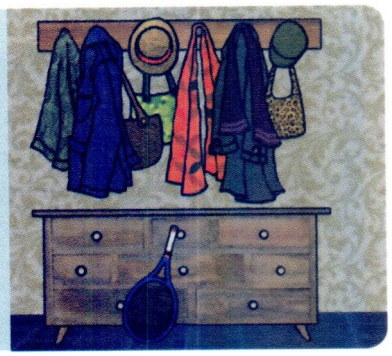
Who's or *whose*?

2 10.9 Listen to the sentences.

If the word is *Whose?* shout '**1**!' If the word is *Who's?* shout '**2**!'

3 10.10 Listen and complete the conversation. Practise it with a partner.

A _____ is this tennis racket?
B It's _____.
A What's it doing here?
B I'm _____ tennis this afternoon.
A Have a good game!



The **Present Continuous** can also describe activities happening in the near future.
I'm playing tennis this afternoon.
We're having pizza for dinner tonight.

4 Make more conversations with *whose* with your partner.

Whose are these suitcases? **They're ours. We're going on holiday tomorrow.**

1 these suitcases?	→	ours / going on holiday tomorrow.
2 this umbrella?	→	mine / going to the shops and it / raining.
3 this passport?	→	Jack's / flying to Rome this afternoon.
4 all these champagne glasses?	→	ours / having a party tonight.

Go online for more **grammar** practice

Reading and listening

One minute in the life of the world!

1 What time is it? What's happening now in your world? What are people doing right now in your town, in your country, in different parts of the world?

People are ... getting up ... sleeping ... getting married ...

2 Read the introduction to the quiz. How many people are there in the world? How many minutes in a year? Compare the time now in your country with other countries round the world.

3 Work with a partner. Do the quiz together and discuss what you think the correct number is for each statistic.

Discuss your ideas with the class.

I think number one is 916 – nearly a thousand people are getting married now.

I'm not so sure.

Listening

4 10.11 Listen and check your ideas.

5 10.11 Listen again and answer the questions about the extra information.

1 Whose was the longest marriage? How long did it last? How old were the couple when they married?
2 How many people are born and die every year on average?
3 What are flying above the Earth at this moment? How many?
4 How many times a day does the average person check their phone?
5 How many texts do people send every year?
6 Which song was the most popular ever on iTunes?
7 How much does the average person earn in one minute? Who is the richest man in the world?
8 How many people does McDonalds employ?
9 What is 46% of our rubbish? What is 27%?
10 When and where did the world's biggest meteor fall?
11 Is lightning hotter or colder than the sun?
12 Which animals are becoming extinct?

What do you think?

- Which numbers most surprised you?
- How often do you check your phone? What do you check for?
- Are there any good reasons why billionaires earn so much more than most people? Or is it just very unfair? How could this change?
- Why do you think we waste so much food? How could we stop this?

Go online to **watch** a video and see what people in different time zones are doing



WHAT'S HAPPENING IN ONE MINUTE IN OUR BUSY WORLD?

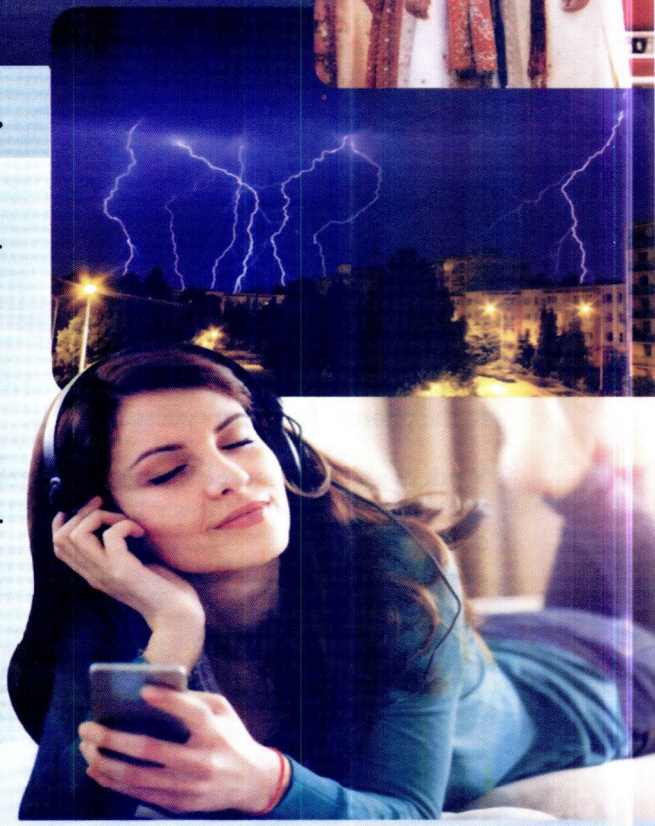
There are almost eight billion people in the world and 525,600 minutes in one year. So, what are all the eight billion doing in any one of those minutes? One minute doesn't seem like a long time, but a lot is happening. When people are getting up in New York, they're having lunch in Paris; when they're enjoying their evening meal in Singapore, they're sleeping soundly in Vancouver. Round the world everyone (including you!) is doing something! What do you think is happening now worldwide, in just one of the 526,600 minutes? Do the Statistics Quiz!





A STATISTICS QUIZ! Worldwide in this ONE minute ...

1. **116** / **916** people are getting married.
2. **107** / **257** babies are being born and **107** / **257** people are dying.
3. About **10,000** / **100,000** planes are flying above the Earth.
4. **18** / **48** million people are making phone calls.
5. **14** million / **144** million are sending emails.
6. **15,000** / **50,000** are downloading songs on iTunes.
7. The top ten billionaires are earning on average **$1,732** / **$20,732**.
8. **4,500** / **45,000** are buying McDonald's hamburgers.
9. We are throwing away **500** / **2,500** tons of rubbish.
10. **4** / **14** meteors are falling to Earth.
11. Lightning is striking in **360** / **3,600** places.
12. **0.15** / **1.15** of an animal is becoming extinct.



Vocabulary and speaking Describing people

1 10.12 Look at the pictures. Listen to four descriptions. Who is it?

2 Work in small groups. Describe the people in the pictures.



3 Take turns in your group to describe one of the people in the photos. The others guess who it is.

4 Work as a class. Choose someone in the room but don't say who it is. Ask and answer *Yes/No* questions to find out who it is.

Is it a girl?

Is she sitting near the window?

Is she wearing trainers?

5 Work in small groups. Think of someone famous or in the news at the moment. Describe them to the group. Can they guess who it is?

He's an actor. He was in a film with ... last year. He's got short brown hair.

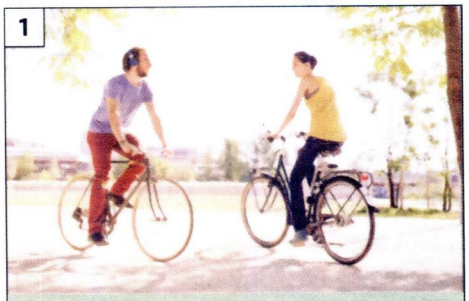
I think it's ...

Go online for more vocabulary practice

Everyday English Everyday situations

1 Work with a partner. Look at the photos and the first lines of the conversations. What do think the responses are?

1



A Beautiful day, isn't it?
B _____

2



A Sorry, I'm late again!
B _____

3



A Can I help you, sir?
B _____

4



A Would you like to go out for a drink after work?
B _____

5



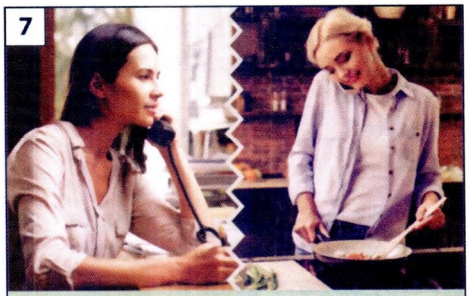
A Excuse me! This machine isn't working.
B _____

6



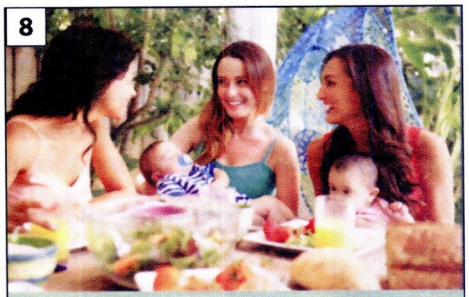
A I can't find my phone.
B _____

7



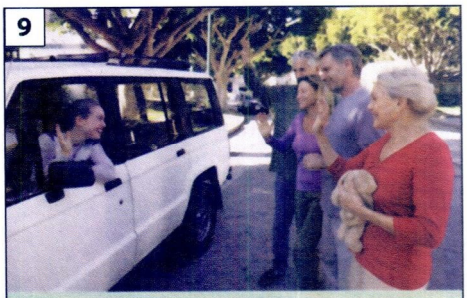
A Thanks for the dinner invite, but I'm afraid I can't come. Sorry.
B _____

8



A Patrick and I are expecting a baby!
B _____

9



A Bye! Have a good journey!
B _____

2 Which sentences complete the conversations?

a Oh dear! Let me have a look. It breaks all the time.
b Not again! You had it in the coffee bar. Did you leave it there?
c Yes. I'm looking for a bike for my 11-year-old son.
d That's a pity! Maybe another time.
e Wow! That's fantastic news! Congratulations!
f Not to worry. We're just starting.
g Yes, it's definitely getting warmer now.
h Thanks. See you in a couple of days!
i I'd love to. Which pub?

3 10.13 Listen and check. What are the extra lines in the conversations?

4 Practise some of the conversations with a partner.

Go online for more **speaking** practice

Writing Comparing and contrasting

Linking words (3) – *but, however, although*

1 *But*, *however* and *although* have similar meanings. Notice how they join these sentences.

1 I love travel, **but** I don't like flying – I prefer the train.
2 I love travel. **However,** I don't like flying – I prefer the train.
3 **Although** I love travel, I don't like flying – I prefer the train.

Which two sentences are the most formal?

2 Join each sentence in three different ways, with *but*, *however* and *although*.

1 I like Peter. I don't love him.
2 My flat has a balcony. It doesn't have a garden.
3 My brother's older than me. He's smaller than me.

3 Complete the text with these linking words.

but	so	because	however	although	when

4 Compare two people in your family, or two friends. Try to use some of the highlighted expressions. Include:

- an introduction
- what they look like
- their personalities
- what they like doing

Go online for more writing practice



My Brothers

I have twin brothers, Nick and Chris. They're 20 years old and [1]_____ they're twins, they are not identical twins [2]_____ they are different in many ways.

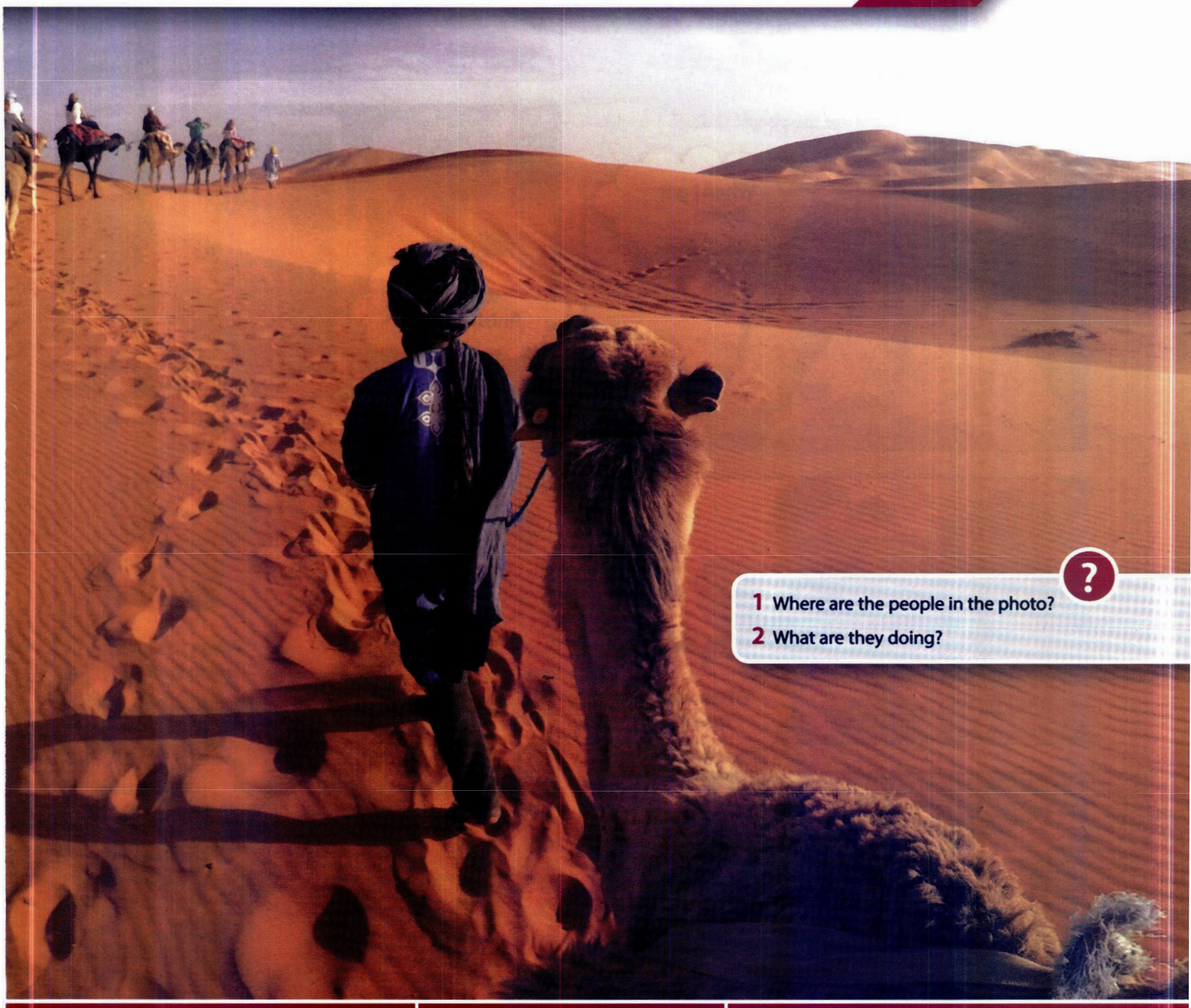
For a start, they don't look alike. Nick's got blond hair and blue eyes, and he's quite tall. [3]_____, Chris isn't very tall, and he's got red hair and brown eyes. Also, they never wear the same clothes. This is [4]_____ our mother always dressed them alike [5]_____ they were children and they hated it.

Something else that they don't like is [6]_____ people talk about 'the twins', not 'Nick' and 'Chris'. They want to be individuals. [7]_____, they do have some interests in common. **For example**, they love being outdoors [8]_____ they often go for long walks together in the countryside. Also, they both have great computer skills. In fact, they're both studying IT at university, [9]_____ in different towns. **Another thing is** that they both hate football, which is very unusual for boys of their age.

Finally, I must say that I love my brothers very much. [10]_____ they have different personalities, they are both lovely brothers. Nick is quiet and quite shy, [11]_____ Chris loves going to parties and telling jokes. [12]_____, both of them are always very kind to me, their little sister. I can tell them all of my problems.

Going for it! 11

- Grammar *going to* future, infinitive of purpose
- Vocabulary What's the weather like?
- Everyday English Making suggestions
- Reading Human towers
- Listening Weather forecast
- Writing Descriptive writing



1 Where are the people in the photo?
2 What are they doing?

Watch the video introduction online

Use your **Workbook** for self study

Go online for more practice and to *Check your Progress*

Grammar *going to* future

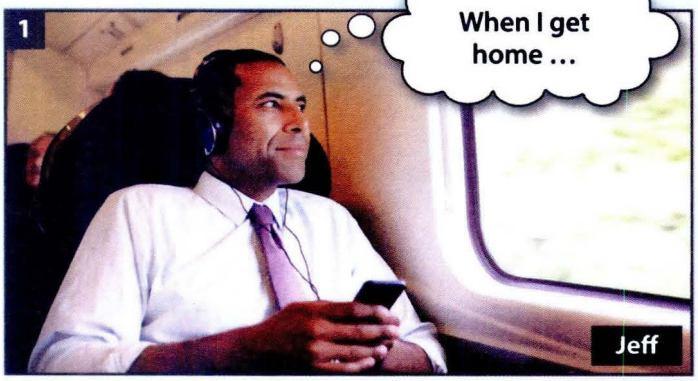
STARTER

How many sentences can you make?

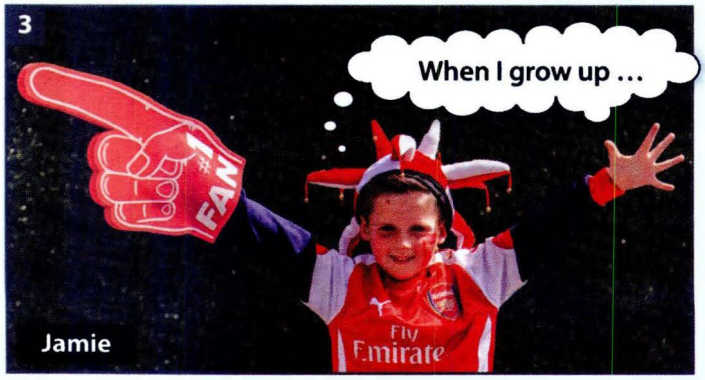
I'm going to work in Moscow	soon.
I worked in Moscow	after I finish university.
	next year.
	in three months' time.
	after I finished university.
	two years ago.

That's the plan!

1 Look at the photos. What are the people doing? What are they thinking about?



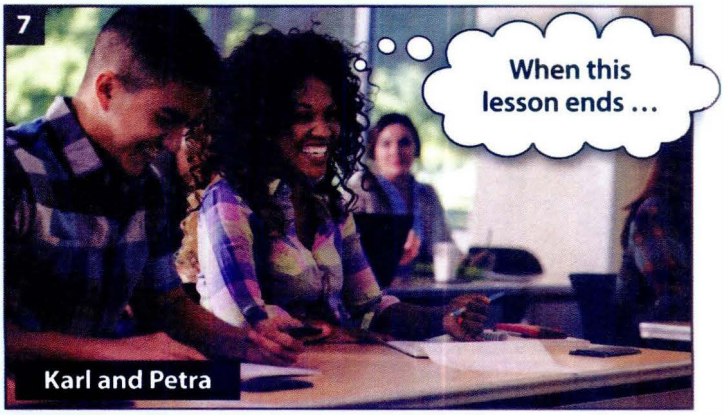












2 Match these future plans with the people in **1**.

1 *Karl and Petra* 'We're going to have a coffee together.'
2 ____ 'I'm going to sit down and have a glass of wine.'
3 ____ 'I'm going to take my dogs for a walk.'
4 *Grace and Molly* 'We're going to see a film.'

Complete these plans. Whose are they?

5 ____ '_____ learn to play golf.'
6 ____ '_____ jump straight in the hotel pool!'
7 ____ '_____ play for Arsenal!'

11.1 Listen and check.

3 11.2 Listen and repeat. Then ask and answer questions about *all* the people in **1** with a partner.

What's Jeff going to do?

He's going to take his dogs for a walk.

4 Work in pairs. Read the people's plans and correct them.

1 When Jeff gets home, he's going to do some work.
When Jeff gets home, he's going to do some work.
He isn't going to do any work. He's going to take his dogs for a walk.
2 When Jenni and family arrive in Corfu, they're going to do some shopping.
3 When Jamie grows up, he's going to play for Chelsea!
4 When Derek retires, he's going to do nothing all day.
5 When Grace and Molly finish work, they're going to see a play.
6 When the kids are in bed, Hannah's going to do the washing.
7 When this lesson ends, Karl and Petra are going to do their homework.

11.3 Listen and check. Repeat the lines that correct the plans.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 The verb to *be* + *going to* expresses future plans.
Complete the chart.

a I		going to cook tonight.
b He/She		
c You/We/They		

2 What are the questions and negatives for *a*, *b* and *c* in **1**.
a What **am I going to cook** tonight?/**I'm not going to cook**.

3 Is there any difference in meaning between these sentences?
I'm leaving tomorrow. **I'm going to leave** tomorrow.

Grammar reference 11.1–11.2 p148

Practice

Talking about you

1 Work in small groups. What are you going to do after the lesson? Ask and answer questions.

- **meet some friends**
- **check your phone**
- **have a coffee**
- **cook a meal**
- **do some shopping**
- **go on the Internet**
- **do your homework**
- **see a film**

Are you going to meet some friends?

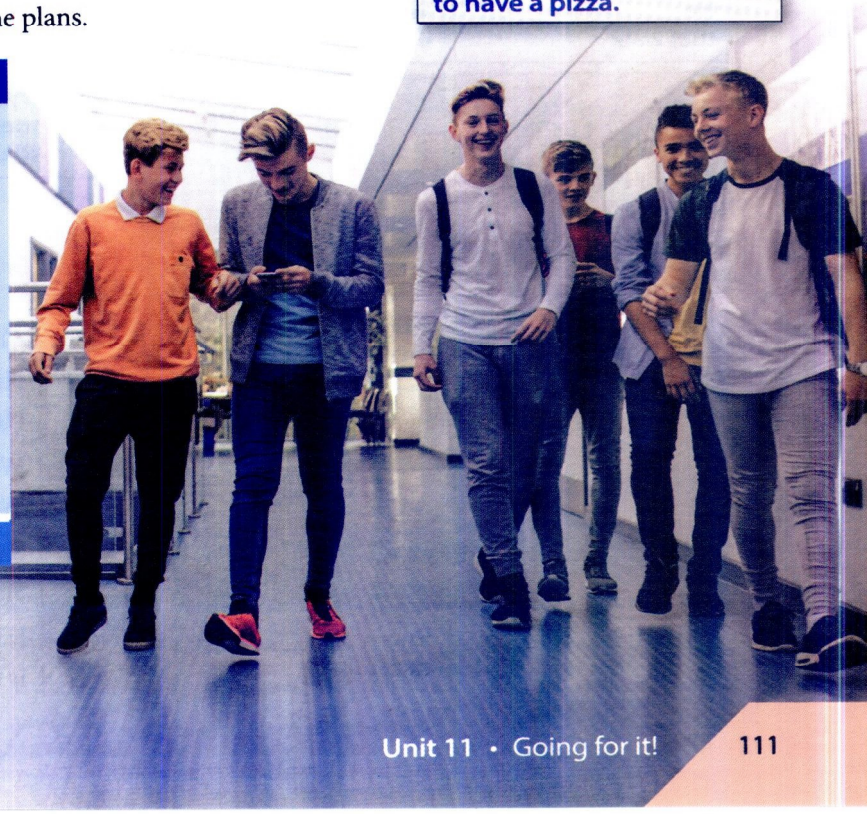
Yes, I am. I'm going to meet Ana and Georg.

No, I'm not.

2 Tell the class some of the things you and the people in your group *are* or *aren't* going to do.

Jan and I are going to meet some friends.

I'm going to cook a meal, but Marta isn't. She's going to have a pizza.



Seeing the future now

GRAMMAR SPOT

We also use ***going to*** when we can see now that something is sure to happen in the future.

Look at those dark clouds! **It's going to rain** soon!

Grammar reference 11.1 p148

3 Work with a partner. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with the words in the box.

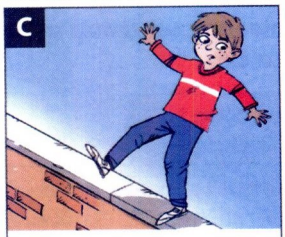
miss	play	~~win~~	kiss	take
fall	have	clean		



She *'s going to win* the race!



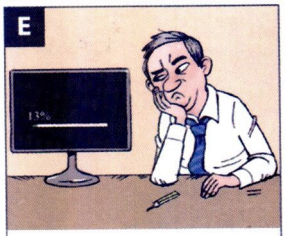
They _____ her windows!



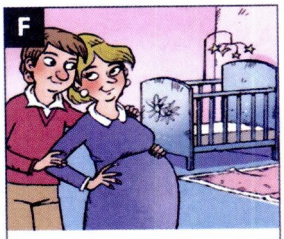
He _____ off that wall!



We _____ our flight!



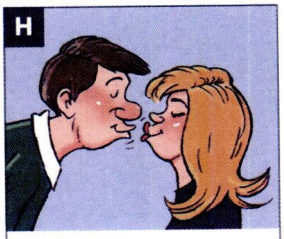
It _____ ages to download!



She _____ the baby very soon!



She _____ the cello!



They _____ each other!

4 Read the conversations and match them with pictures **A–H** in exercise 3.

1 **A** Where's Jamie gone? I can't see him anywhere.
B Look! He's up there! Careful, Jamie! Oh no! C

2 **A** Oh no, that's my sister with her new boyfriend!
B Oooh, so in love, aren't they?! Ugh! Don't look! ___

3 **A** Can we not watch the film yet?
B No, sorry. The Wi-fi's really slow at the moment. ___

4 **A** What lovely singing! There's so much talent in this village! Who's next?
B It's Jeff's wife, Lucy! ___

5 **A** How are Alice and Theo these days?
B I think they're busy getting everything ready. ___

6 **A** What are those men doing outside Mrs Simpson's house?
B Ooh, I don't know. Look, they've got a ladder, and… Oh! ___

7 **A** Come on, Annabel! Come on! You can do it!
B Look, she's moving in front! Woah! ___

8 **A** This is hopeless!
B I know. I think there's an accident ahead – nothing's moving. ___

5 11.4 Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

6 11.5 Work with a partner. Listen to eight sounds. As you hear each one, use a noun from **A** and a verb from **B** to say what's going to happen. Then listen and check.



A	man (x2)	policemen	~~car~~
	plane	woman (x2)	bee



B	cry	fall asleep	take off
	sneeze	answer the door	~~crash~~
	sting someone	arrest someone	

The car's going to crash.

Check it

7 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

1 ☐ He goes to watch the football.
☐ He's going to watch the football.

2 ☐ We going to see a film later.
☐ We're going to see a film later.

3 ☐ She isn't going to cook tonight.
☐ She no going to cook tonight.

4 ☐ Is going to rain?
☐ Is it going to rain?

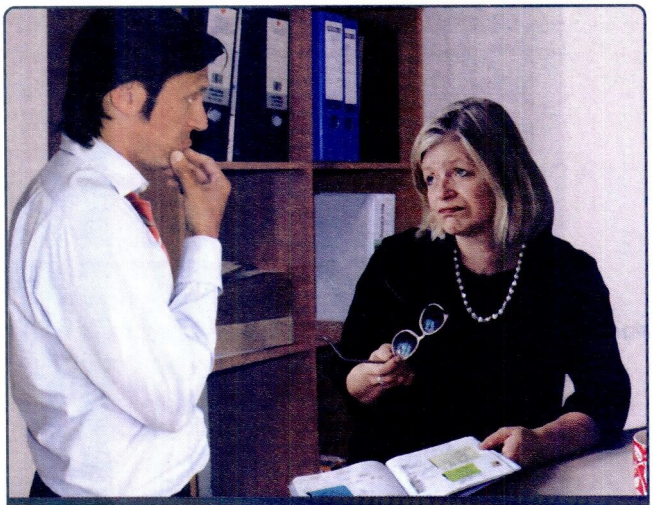
Why am I going there?!

Infinitive of purpose

1 Which of these places are normally in a busy manager's diary? Match them to the activities.

Places	Activities
gym	see a play
restaurant	do exercise
conference	see an exhibition
shop	get a train
school	have lunch
barber's	give a presentation
theatre	pick your kids up
airport	have a haircut
art gallery	buy a present for someone
railway station	get a flight

2 11.6 **Rob** is a busy manager in a pharmaceutical company. Listen and complete the conversation with his personal assistant, **Angela**.



Rob's diary

A Next week's very busy. You have a car to the airport at 6.30 a.m. on Monday morning.

R _____ _____ a flight to where?

A Brussels. Remember?

R Ah yes. And, er, why am I going there?

A _____ _____ a presentation at the ExMed conference.

R Oh, yes, of course.

A You're coming back on Tuesday morning, and you're going to Restaurant Victoire at 1.00, _____ _____ lunch with our chairman.

11.6 Listen again and check. Practise the conversation with a partner.

3 11.7 Listen to all of **Rob** and **Angela's** conversation. Tick (✓) the places and activities in **1** that they talk about. Why do you think Angela is leaving the company?

4 How many of the things in Rob's diary can you remember? Take turns to tell your partner.

He's going to the airport, to get a flight to Brussels.

He's going to a conference, to ...

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 With the verbs *to go* and *to come*, we usually use the Present Continuous for future plans.

You're **coming** back on Tuesday morning, and you're **going** to Café Royal at 1.00.

NOT ~~You're going to come~~ back ... and ~~you're going to go~~ to Café Royal at 1.00.

2 Do these sentences mean the same?

We're going to London **to see** a play.

We're going to London **because we want to see** a play.

What question do both of the sentences answer?

Grammar reference 11.2–11.3 p148

Practice

Talking about you

1 Work with a partner. Tell them when you last went to some of the places in **1**, and why.

I went to a restaurant last Saturday, to have an Indian meal.

I went to an art gallery in January, to see ...

2 Write the names of some places you are going later today, or next week. Tell a partner. Ask and answer questions about the places.

The Playhouse Theatre.

Are you going to see a play?

No, to see my favourite band – they're playing there.

Tell the class about your partner.

Go online for more **grammar** practice

Reading and speaking

Human towers

1 Look at the photo of the girl.

- What is she wearing?
- What do you think she is going to do?

2 Read the first part of the text. Are these statements true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false ones.

1 Carla is feeling relaxed.
2 She's wearing trainers.
3 Carla and Mariona live together.
4 The girls are *castellers*.
5 Vilafranca is in Catalonia.
6 There are thousands of *castellers* in the stadium.

3 Read the rest of the text. Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

1 Who is at the bottom of the tower? Who is at the top?
2 What is an *enxaneta*? Why is it the smallest child?
3 Why is being an *enxaneta* dangerous?
4 How do the girls' parents feel when they watch them climb?
5 Why did Mariona cry when she fell?
6 How many people are there in their team?
7 What do *castells* show about the community?
8 Which tower wins the competition?
9 What is Mariona going to start doing soon? Why?

What do you think?

- Why do you think *castellers* don't wear shoes?
- Do you think it's too dangerous for a five-year-old to be an *enxaneta*?
- Would you like to be a *casteller*? Why/Why not?
- What could you do when you were young that you can't do now because you're older and bigger?

Roleplay

Work with a partner.

Student A: You are a journalist. Interview an *enxaneta*. You can use ideas from **3** to help.

Student B: You are an *enxaneta*. Answer the journalist's questions.

A What is an enxaneta?
B It's the child at the top of the tower. It's ...
A Who is at the bottom of the tower? ...

Project

What community traditions are there in your country? Find out more about one and tell the class.

Go online to **watch** a video and learn about another exciting challenge.

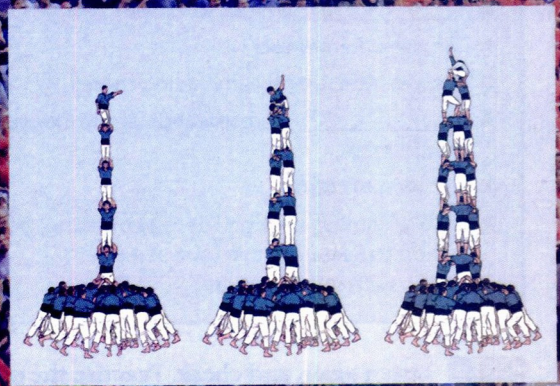


THE CASTELLERS OF CATALONIA



It's a bright, sunny afternoon in Catalonia, Spain. A man is walking towards a stadium with a young girl on his shoulders. The girl is nervous, but excited. She's wearing a blue shirt, white trousers and a red safety helmet. Perhaps she's going to be in a cycle race? But no, she hasn't got any shoes on! So, what *is* she going to do?

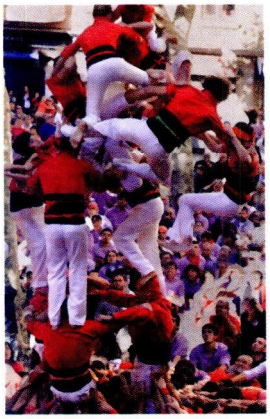
The girl is **Carla Olivella**, from the town of Vilafranca, and she's going to climb. She's going to try and climb to the top of a tower of people. Carla and her sister, Mariona, are *castellers*. It's an old tradition, and people come from all over Catalonia to enter competitions to make human towers, or *castells*. There are hundreds of *castellers* in the stadium, and thousands of people are going to watch them climb.



Castells score points for how high, and for how difficult they are.

FROM THE BOTTOM TO THE TOP

The oldest and biggest *castellers* push together around the bottom of the tower to make it strong. The smallest and lightest children go higher up. The child at the very top is called the *enxaneta* (the 'rider'). When they get there and put their hand up, their team can win.



A falling tower

'Everyone is nervous', says Carla, a new *enxaneta*. 'It's my first competition.' Her mother is even more nervous. 'When Carla and Mariona climb, I watch their every move', she says. 'I can't not look.' It can be dangerous. The people towers often fall, and when a 12-metre tower collapses, it's a long way down for those at the top.

EVERYONE IS IMPORTANT

Mariona, eight, became an *enxaneta* when she was five. She likes drawing, eating pasta, and climbing, climbing, climbing. She's never afraid. 'She has amazingly cold blood', her father says. That's not true for him – he cries every time his daughters climb. In one competition, the tower fell twice before Mariona could get to the top. Her father ran to her and found her crying. 'I'm not crying because I'm hurt, I'm crying because I'm angry!' she shouted. Her 600 teammates heard her and decided to have one more go. And Mariona got to the top!

Castells show that every single person in the community has an important role to play. The big, strong men at the bottom are no more important than the women and boys in the middle, and they can't win without the little girl at the top.

HIGHEST AND BEST

The winning tower isn't always the highest – it also depends on how complicated they are. Carla climbed the highest and most complicated tower of the day in her first competition. The Vilafranca team were champions! Mariona is getting bigger, and knows she can't be an *enxaneta* for much longer. She's going to start gymnastics soon. Is she afraid of anything? She thinks for a moment. 'Getting bad grades at school.'

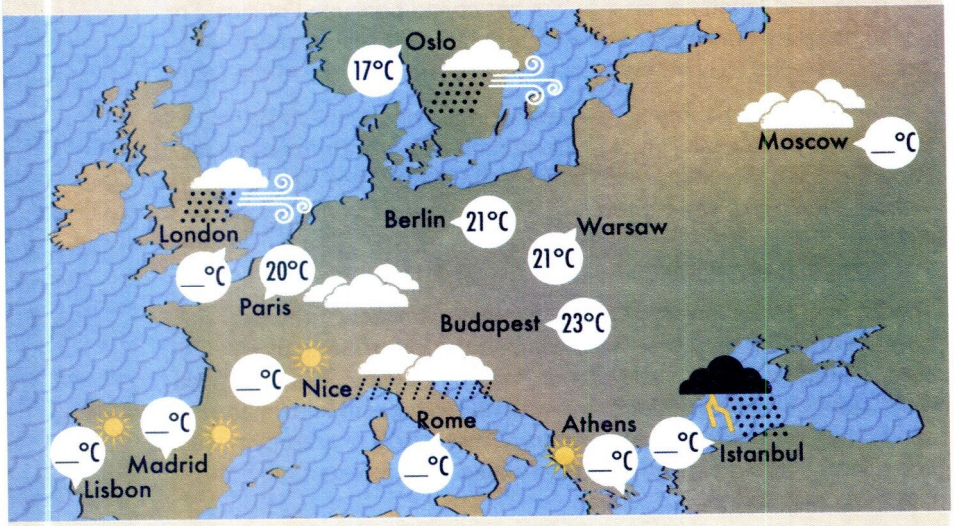


Carla celebrating

Vocabulary and listening

What's the weather going to be like?

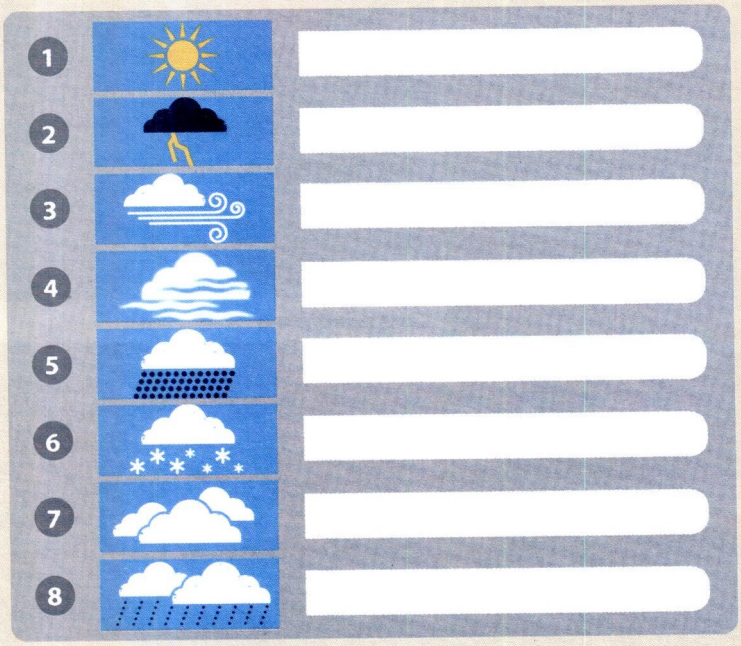
1 Look at the weather map of Europe and name some of the countries.



11.8 Listen to the weather forecast. Write the temperatures on the map. Which season is it? What month do you think it is?

2 Write the weather adjectives in the box next to the correct symbols. Which three adjectives weren't in the forecast in 1?

sunny rainy windy snowy cloudy foggy showery stormy



3 Look at these adjectives. Which words in 2 can they go with? Make some sentences.

hot warm cold cool wet dry bright

It's bright and sunny. It's cold and rainy.

What's ... like?

11.9 Listen and repeat the question.
What's the weather like?

What is ... like? asks for a description. *What's the weather like?* means *Describe the weather.*

4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about the weather at different times of the year in your country. Can you do it for other countries? Use sentences from 3 in your answers.

What's the weather like in June? — **It's warm and sunny.**

What's the weather like in England in December? — **It's ...**

5 11.10 Listen and complete the conversation. Practise it with a partner.

A What's the weather like today?
B It's _____ and _____.
A And what was it like yesterday?
B Oh, it was _____ and _____.
A And what's it going to be like tomorrow?
B I think it's going to be _____ and _____.

Ask and answer questions about the weather where you are for today, yesterday and tomorrow.

6 Work with a new partner to find out about world weather tomorrow.

Student A Look at p151.

Student B Look at p154.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

What's the weather going to be like in Berlin? — **Cold and rainy. Seven degrees.**

7 Write a short weather forecast for where you are for the coming weekend, and one for another city in the world. Read them to your partner.

Go online for more **vocabulary** practice

Everyday English

Making suggestions

1 Work in pairs. In the chart, make a list of …

- things you can do in good weather.
- things you can do in bad weather.

Good weather	Bad weather
play tennis	*watch a film on Netflix*

Compare your list with the class.

2 11.11 Listen and complete the conversations.

3 Continue the conversations in **2** with these lines in the correct order.

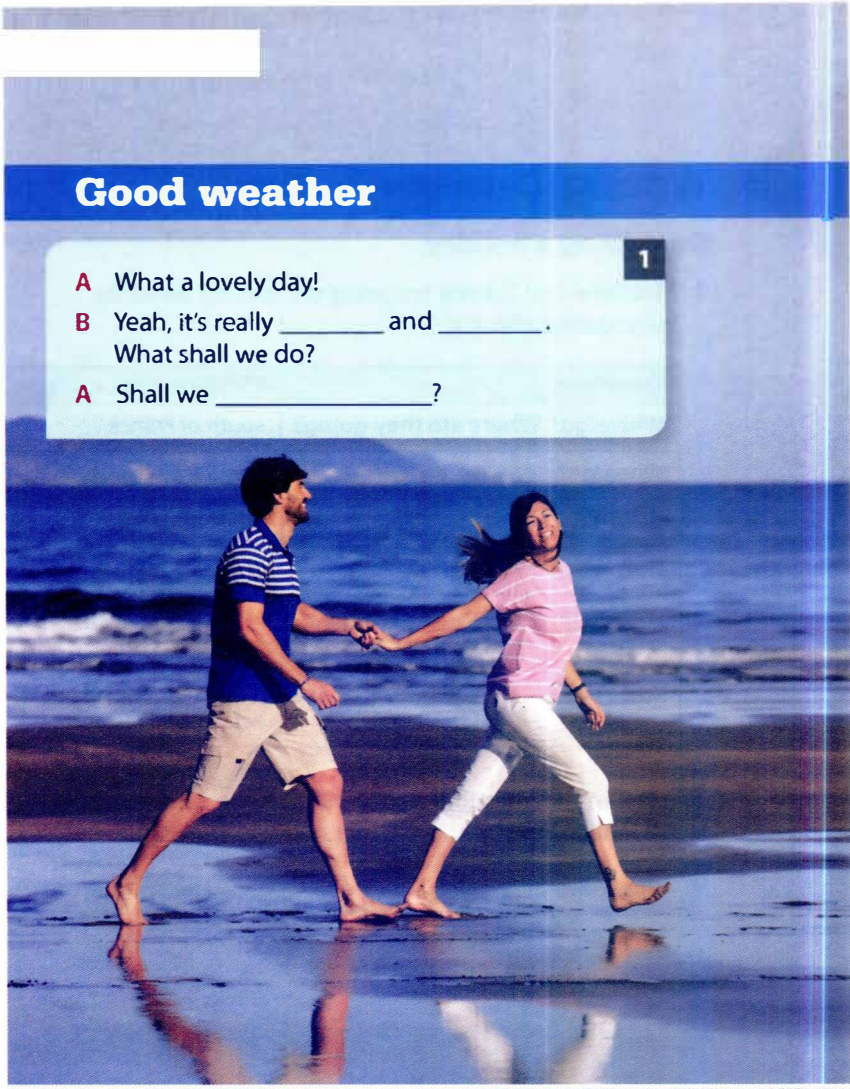
No, that's boring! We did that last night!
Oh no! It's too hot to walk!
OK, why don't we go to the beach?
OK then, why don't we go out for a coffee?
Good idea! We could take a picnic!
Yes! We could go to Café Nero.
I'll help you make it.
Great! I'll get my coat and umbrella.

11.12 Listen and check. Practise the conversations with a partner.

4 Have more conversations suggesting what to do when the weather is good or bad. Use your list of activities in **1**. Act out two of your conversations to the class.

1 We can use *shall* with *I* and *we* to make suggestions.
What shall we do? Shall we go for a walk?
(= I suggest that we go for a walk.)
2 We use *Let's* to make a suggestion for everyone. (Let's = let us)
Let's watch a film! (= I suggest that we watch a film)
3 We can also use *could* and *why don't we …?*
We could go out.
Why don't we go out for a meal?

Go online for more **speaking** practice



Good weather

1

A What a lovely day!
B Yeah, it's really _____ and _____.
What shall we do?
A Shall we _____?

Bad weather

2

A What an awful day! It's raining again.
B I know. It's so _____ and _____!
What shall we do?
A Let's _____ and _____.

Writing Descriptive writing

Describing a holiday

1 **Matthew** and **Emma** are going on holiday. Read the information about it.

Questions	Matthew and Emma
Where/go? **Where are they going?**	south of France
When/go?	May 21
How/travel?	plane and hired car
How long/stay?	10 days
Where/stay?	a house in a village
What/do?	swim, go shoppping in the markets, read and relax, eat in good restaurants

2 Write in the questions about Matthew and Emma's holiday. Ask and answer with a partner.

Where are they going? **To the south of France.**

11.13 Listen and compare.

3 It's now May 28th. Matthew and Emma are in France. Read the email that they are writing to friends. Complete it with the adjectives from the box. Use each adjective once only.

delicious	**wonderful**	**hot**	**old**
beautiful	**relaxed**	**warmer**	**frightened**
huge	**busy**	**loud**	**sunny**
colourful	**expensive**	**peaceful**	

4 Write a holiday email to a friend. Write about some of these things:

- where you are
- the journey
- where you are staying
- the weather
- your activities, past, present, and future.

Read it aloud to a partner.

Go online for more writing practice

To: jamie.chloe.dawson@dotmail.co.uk

Subject: Hello from France!

28 May 10:23

Hi Jamie and Chloe!

We're having a really [1]_____ time here in the south of France. We're renting a lovely, [2]_____ house in a [3]_____ village. It's got a swimming pool, which is great because the weather is quite [4]_____ for May. We usually swim in the afternoons, when the water is [5]_____. Yesterday there was a [6]_____ storm – the thunder was so [7]_____ we were quite [8]_____ and ran into the house!

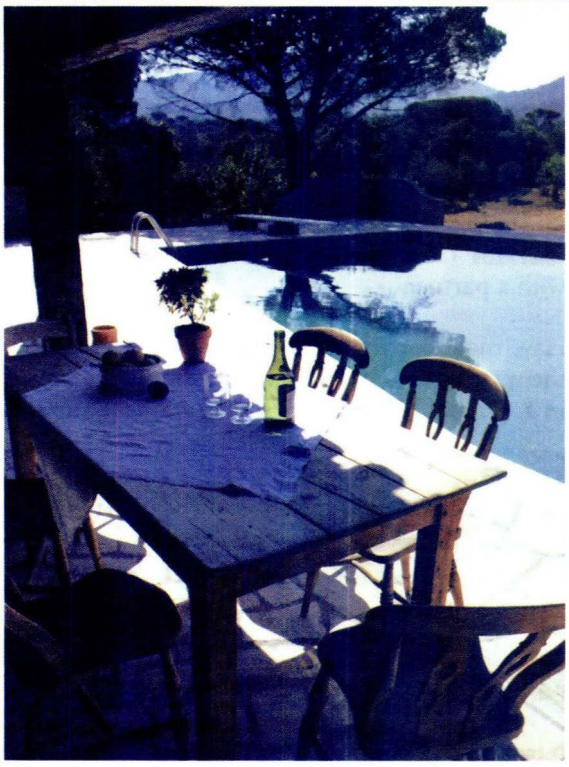
Today it's [9]_____ and warm again and we're going to the market in a town called St Rémy. We love the markets here – they're so [10]_____, but the things are quite [11]_____. This evening we're having dinner in a local restaurant called 'Le Provençale' – their food looks [12]_____!

It's so quiet and [13]_____ here. We feel very [14]_____. We're reading a lot – we never have time to read at home we're always too [15]_____.

Only three more days! See you soon.

Love,

Matthew and Emma x



Have you ever ... ? 12

- Grammar Present Perfect + *ever/never, yet* and *just*
- Vocabulary *take* and *get*
- Everyday English Transport and travel
- Reading 21st century explorers
- Listening Past explorers
- Writing A poem

1 What are they doing?
2 Would you like to do this? Why/Why not?



Watch the video introduction online

Use your **Workbook** for self study

Go online for more practice and to *Check your Progress*

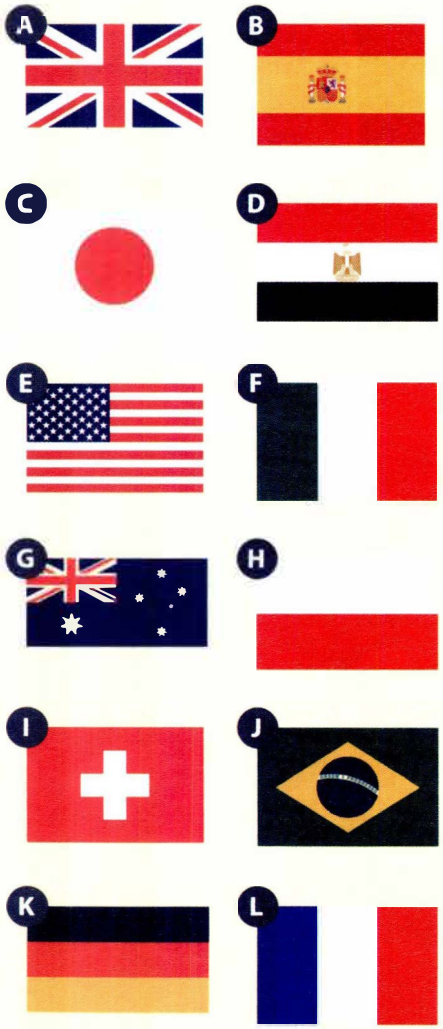
Grammar Present Perfect + *ever* and *never*

STARTER

1 Match the countries and flags. What are their capital cities?

Australia	Brazil
Egypt	France
Great Britain	Poland
Germany	Italy
Japan	Spain
Switzerland	the US

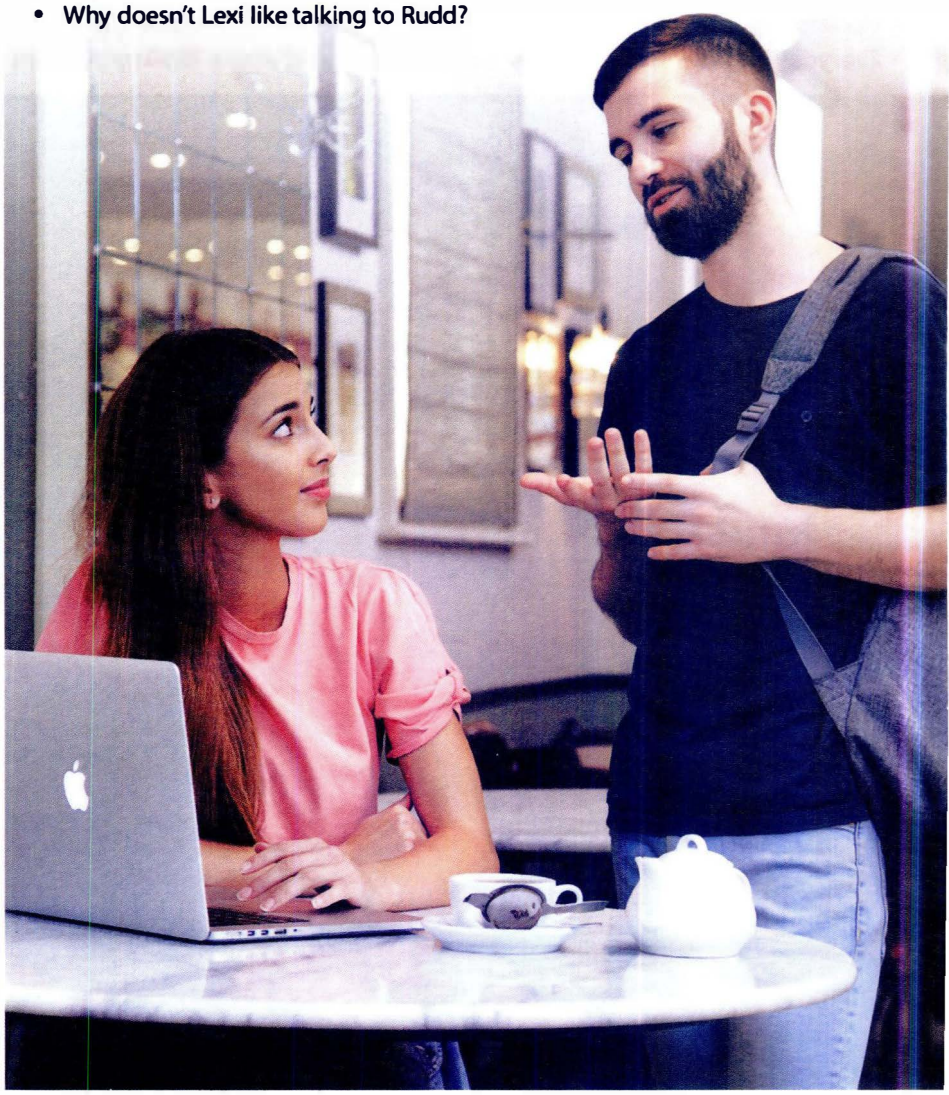
2 Tick (✓) the countries that you have visited.



He's been *every*where!

1 12.1 Lexi and her friend, Rudd, are from Australia. Listen to their conversation. Answer the questions.

- What are they talking about?
- Who is Abby?
- Why doesn't Lexi like talking to Rudd?



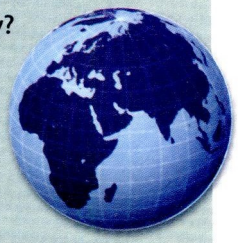
2 Read these lines from the conversation. Who is the person in **bold**?

1 **I**'ve been to Rome many times. (**I've** = I have)
2 **I**'ve never been there.
3 **She**'s been to London and Paris. (**She's** = She has)
4 **She** hasn't been to Rome.
5 Have **you** ever been to the US?
6 **I** haven't travelled much at all.
7 **I**'ve been to North and South America.
8 **You**'ve been everywhere, **I**'ve been nowhere.

12.2 Listen and repeat the lines.

3 12.3 Listen and complete this conversation. Practise it with a partner.

A Have you *ever* been to Australia?
B No, I _____.
A _____ you _____ been to Italy?
B Yes, I _____.
A When _____ you go?
B Two years _____.
A Where _____ you _____?
B Rome, Florence and Venice.
A Wow! _____ you _____ a good time?
B Yes, I _____. It was fantastic.



4 Work in groups. Tell each other which countries in the **Starter** you have or haven't been to.

Have you ever been to ... ?

I've been to Switzerland, but I've never been to the US.

I haven't been to any of those countries!

5 Tell the class about another student.

Anita's been to Berlin. She went there two years ago.

Vincent hasn't been to Paris. He's never been to Paris.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 The Present Perfect can express experiences.
I've been to Paris.
Have you **ever** (*at any time in your life*) **been** to Paris?

2 The Past Simple expresses exactly when something happened.
I **went** to Paris **last year/a year ago.**
'**When did** you **go** to Madrid?' 'In 2016.'

3 The Present Perfect is formed with *have/has* + the past participle.
Complete the table.

	Positive	Negative	
I/You/We/They			been to Paris.
He/She/It			

4 Write *ever* and *never* in these sentences.
Has he _____ been to London?
He's _____ been to Paris.

Grammar reference 12.1–12.2 p148

Practice

1 Here are the **past participles** of some verbs. Which *two* are regular verbs?

Write the **infinitive**.

been	*be*	made	_____	taken	_____
failed	_____	swum	_____	eaten	_____
given	_____	slept	_____	bought	_____
won	_____	had	_____	done	_____
lived	_____	met	_____		
seen	_____	run	_____		

2 What are the **Past Simple** forms of the verbs? Check your answers.

irregular verbs on p155

3 Work with a partner. Take turns to test each other.

Be! Was/were, been!

Swim! Swam, swum!

Talking about you

4 Have you ever done any of these things in your life?

Have you ever ... ?
- won a competition
- lived in a foreign country
- swum underwater
- met a famous person
- appeared on YouTube
- stayed up all night
- seen an eclipse
- slept in a tent
- run a marathon
- failed an exam

5 Work in small groups. Ask and answer questions.

Have you ever won a competition?

No, I haven't./ Yes, I have.

What did you win?

6 Tell the class about your group.

Hanna hasn't met a famous person, but she once saw Justin Bieber in concert.

Are we ready yet?

Present Perfect + *yet*, *already* and *just*

1 12.4 **Lexi** and **Abby** are getting ready for their trip to Europe. Read their 'Things to do' list and listen to their conversation. Tick (✓) the things they have done.

2 Look at Lexi and Abby's list again with a partner. Say what they have done and what they haven't done yet.

They've bought new backpacks.
They haven't finished packing yet.

12.4 Listen again and check. Practise the conversation.

THINGS TO DO ...

1 buy new backpacks
2 finish packing
3 collect euros from bank
4 email Abby's aunt in London
5 find out weather forecast for Rome
6 print e-tickets
7 check in online

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the sentences.
1 They ____ already bought new backpacks.
2 They ____ finished packing **yet**.
3 _____ you emailed your aunt **yet**?
4 She _____ **just** emailed back.

2 Where do we put *yet* in a sentence? Where do we put *just* and *already*?

3 We can only use *yet* with two of the following. Which two?
• positive sentences • questions • negative sentences

Grammar reference 12.3 p148

3 Complete the questions and answers using *just*, *already* and *yet*.

1 Q Have you finished packing?
A No, not _____. I've only _____ started.
2 Q Do you need to buy a new backpack?
A No, I've _____ got one. I bought it last week.
3 Q Have you heard from your aunt _____?
A Yes, I've _____ had an email from her, but I haven't read it _____.

12.5 Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

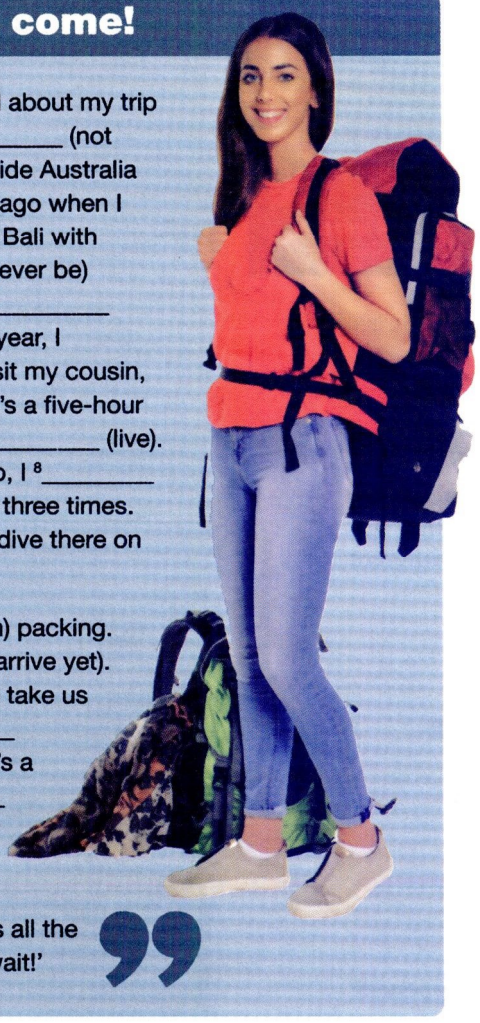


Practice

Tense revision

1 Lexi is talking about her trip. Read what she says and put the verb in brackets in the correct tense.

Europe here we come!



'I'm really excited about my trip to Europe. I [1]_____ (not travel) much outside Australia before. Just once, two years ago when I [2]_____ (go) on holiday to Bali with my family, but I [3]_____ (never be) to Europe or the US. I often [4]_____ (travel) inside Australia. Last year, I [5]_____ (fly) to Perth to visit my cousin, who [6]_____ (live) there. It's a five-hour flight from Sydney, where I [7]_____ (live). Australia's a big country! Also, I [8]_____ (be) up to Cairns in the north three times. I [9]_____ (learn) to scuba dive there on the Great Barrier Reef.

We [10]_____ (just finish) packing. The taxi [11]_____ (not arrive yet). We [12]_____ (wait) for it to take us to the airport. I [13]_____ (never fly) on a 747 before. It's a very long flight. It [14]_____ (take) 20 hours to get to Rome, but I [15]_____ (not sleep) on the journey – I [16]_____ (watch) films all the way. It's so exciting! I can't wait!'

12.6 Listen and check.

2 Answer the questions about Lexi. Ask and answer with a partner.

1 Why is she excited?
2 Has she ever travelled outside of Australia?
3 Does she often travel?
4 Why did she go to Perth?
5 Where does Lexi live?
6 How many times has she been to Cairns?
7 What did she do there?
8 How are they going to the airport?
9 How long does the flight to Rome take?
10 What is she going to do on the flight? What is she *not* going to do?

No, not yet!

3 Work with a partner. Make questions with *yet* and use *not yet* and *just* sometimes in your answers.

Have you checked your emails yet?
Yes, I've just checked them.
No, I haven't./No, not yet.

1 check your emails
2 have breakfast
3 make the coffee
4 do the shopping
5 tidy your room
6 take the dog for a walk
7 meet the new student
8 finish the exercise

12.7 Listen and compare.

Check it

4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

1 ☐ I saw Harry yesterday.
☐ I've seen Harry yesterday.

2 ☐ Did you ever met my cousin?
☐ Have you ever met my cousin?

3 ☐ When did she go to Bali?
☐ When has she been to Bali?

4 ☐ How often do you take a taxi?
☐ How often are you taking a taxi?

5 ☐ What are you going to wear on the journey?
☐ What do you going to wear on the journey?

6 ☐ He doesn't like flying.
☐ He isn't liking flying.

7 ☐ Has Lexi yet finished packing?
☐ Has Lexi finished packing yet?

8 ☐ Did you ever been to a rock concert?
☐ Have you ever been to a rock concert?

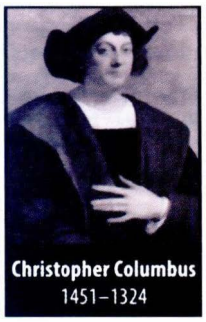
Go online for more **grammar** practice

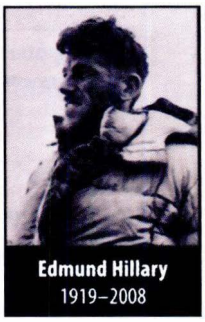
Reading and listening

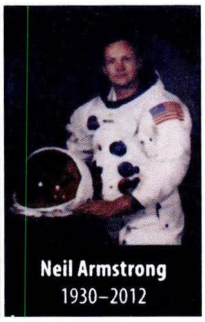
Explorers – ancient and modern

1 What do you know about these explorers? What nationality are they? Why are they famous? Which places did they explore?


Leif Erikson
970–1020


Christopher Columbus
1451–1324


Edmund Hillary
1919–2008


Neil Armstrong
1930–2012

2 12.8 Listen to a description of each explorer. Who is it? Check your ideas.

I think that's Leif Erikson. | I'm not sure. I think ...

3 Past explorers went to new places. Look at the photos of the **21st Century 'Explorers'**. Who are they? What do they do? Read the introduction and the titles. How are they different from past explorers?

4 Divide into two groups, **A** and **B**.

Group A: Read about **Gary Connery** and **Lynne Cox**.
Group B: Read about **Robbie Shone** and **Karen Darke**.

Answer the questions about your people.

1 Why is their sport amazing? Is it also their job?
2 Do they do it on land, at sea or in the air?
3 What have they done? Give examples.
4 Which countries and places have they been to?
5 Have they received any awards? What?
6 Have they ever been injured or ill? If so, what happened?
7 Have they ever met the Queen?
8 Which person do you most admire? Why?

5 Find someone from the other group. Go through the questions again and tell him/her about your people.

What do you think?

- Which of the four people have done the most dangerous things?
- Who is the most courageous?
- Which person do you think has the most interesting life? Why?
- Would you like to do any of the things they do? Which and why?
- Which of the people, ancient and modern, do you find most interesting? Why?

Go online to **watch** a video and learn about exciting experiences other people have had.

21ST CENTURY 'EXPLORERS'

GARY CONNERY Wingsuit flyer



LYNNE COX Cold-water athlete



ROBBIE SHONE Cave explorer and photographer



KAREN DARKE Paralympic cyclist, triathlete and adventurer



Human beings have been to all corners of the world. They have explored land and sea and even walked on the moon. How much more is there for them to explore and experience in the 21st century? The answer is: 'A LOT'! Human beings are amazing!

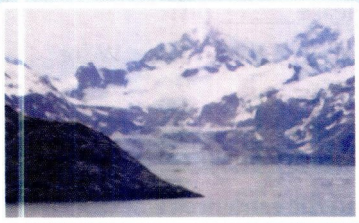
Gary Connery is 42 and he's a **'wingsuit flyer'**. He has made over 1,350 jumps from a helicopter over 730 metres above the Earth. He's flown free through the air at 80mph (128kph) and landed *without* a parachute. He has jumped from the Eiffel Tower, Nelson's Column, the London Eye, Tower Bridge, and from inside the Millennium Dome.

So, what exactly is 'wingsuit flying'? It is the sport of skydiving, but you don't use a parachute to land. You wear a special suit with huge wings on the arms and legs, and you fly for miles like a bird and finally land on a mountain of cardboard boxes!

Gary's lucky – the sport he loves is also his work. He has worked in over 100 films as a stunt man. Perhaps you saw him in one of the 'Indiana Jones' or 'Batman' films or in TV's 'Sherlock Holmes'. But surely his most famous role was when he played Queen Elizabeth II in the opening ceremony of the 2012 Olympics in London and flew into the Olympic Stadium.



Lynne Cox, long-distance swimmer and cold water athlete, swims as easily as most people walk. She is American, but has twice held the record for the fastest swim across the English Channel, from England to France. She has also swum across the icy waters of the Bering Strait from Alaska to the Soviet Union. This swim was in 1987 and took just two hours and five minutes. The two countries' presidents, Ronald Reagan and Mikhail Gorbachev, praised her courage. Gorbachev said it showed how close the people of America and Russia were.



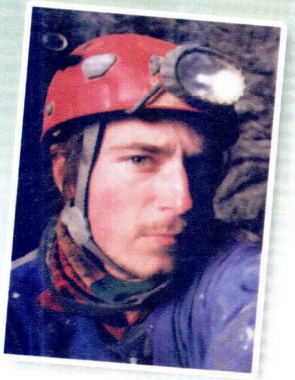
Lynne has swum all over the world in even colder waters. In 2003, she swam 1.22 miles (1.96 km) in the Antarctic. Here the sea gets cold enough to kill a person in 5 minutes, and she got into the water and stayed there for 25 minutes. She has also swum round the Cape of Good Hope in South Africa and the Straits of Magellan in Chile.

Lynne has survived not only freezing waters but also a serious heart illness. She is a true superhero.

'Caving' (called 'spelunking' in the US and Canada and 'potholing' in the UK) is the sport of exploring underground caves. **Robbie Shone** is a **cave explorer and photographer**. He has travelled the world with his camera, from the Alps in Austria to China, from Borneo to Mexico. He has taken pictures of the deepest, largest and smallest caves ever discovered and his photographs have appeared in many books and magazines, including the 'National Geographic' and Bear Grylls' 'Great Outdoor Adventures'. In 2007, he worked on the BBC TV series, 'Earth – The Power and the Planet.'

Caving is often very dangerous. There are big dangers such as flooding or rock falls, but also smaller ones. In 2016, during a three-month trip to Papua New Guinea a leech got into Robbie's eye and stuck to it. It took two days before he finally removed it with salt and meat!

It is no surprise that Robbie has received many national and international awards for his photographs.



In 1992, a fall when **rock-climbing** changed **Karen Darke's** life forever. She thought her sporting life was over, but since then she has found that even when paralysed many things are possible. She has won medals at the Paralympics and travelled the world, having adventures on wheels, water and snow. Karen just loves being outdoors. She says: 'I think adventures can be anything – small or large – in your garden or on the other side of the world.'

She has crossed Greenland's 372-mile ice cap sitting on skis, kayaked from Canada to Alaska, and hand-cycled over the Himalayas.



She has also climbed Mont Blanc and the Matterhorn, and hand-cycled, skied and swum the length of Japan. In 2010, she became a member of the British Paralympic cycling team and in 2012 she won a silver medal at the London Paralympics. In 2016, she did even better and won gold in the Rio Games in Brazil. In 2017, she received an MBE from Queen Elizabeth for services to sport.

Karen is truly an inspirational and extraordinary human being.

Vocabulary and speaking *take* and *get*

1 The verbs *take* and *get* have a lot of uses in English. Replace the underlined words from the texts on p125 with a word on the right.

1 He has taken pictures of the deepest caves.
2 This swim took just two hours and five minutes.
3 She got into the water.
4 The sea gets cold enough to kill a person in five minutes.

becomes
photographed
lasted
entered

2 Here are some more expressions. Which go with *take*, which with *get*?

very wet | a test | better soon | home late | off your coat
ready | married | place | on/off the bus
a long time | a lot of emails | it easy | bored

take	get

3 Complete the conversations with an expression from 2 in the correct tense.

12.9 Listen and check. Practise with a partner.



1 A Is it me or is this room really hot?
B It's you! Why don't you _____ _____ your jumper?



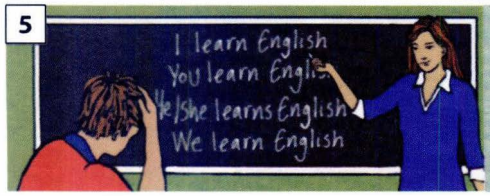
2 A Is your office near where you live?
B No, it _____ a _____ time to _____ to work most days.



3 A Why was your dad so angry?
B Well, I _____ _____ home until after midnight last night. I was at Rob's party.



4 A Excuse me! How often are there exhibitions in the museum?
B They _____ _____ regularly, every two months. Here's an information brochure.



5 A Do you like learning English?
B It's OK, but sometimes I _____ really bored. It _____ forever to become really fluent.

4 Complete the sentences with *take* or *get* in the correct form.

1 The best way to ***get*** to the airport is to ***take*** a taxi.
2 How long does it _____ if you go by train?
3 I haven't _____ a camera. I always _____ photos with my phone.
4 Sue _____ her driving test three times, and she's failed every time.
5 Are you still _____ ready? We're going to be so late!
6 The doctor told me to _____ it easy, if I want to _____ better soon.
7 It rained on the day we _____ married. We _____ very wet, but still had a great day.
8 You can't _____ on the bus with that big dog. Please _____ off!
9 Slow down! _____ your time. We're not in a hurry.
10 I _____ so many emails, I don't have time to answer them all.

12.10 Read the sentences aloud. Then listen and check.

Talking about you

5 Work with a partner. Complete the questions then ask and answer them about you.

1 How long does it _____ you to _____ to school?
2 What time do you _____ back home after school/work?
3 What time do you usually _____ up in the morning?
4 Have you _____ any exams recently?
5 Does it _____ you a long time to _____ ready before you go out?
6 Are you _____ tired of this exercise?

Go online for more vocabulary practice

Everyday English Transport and travel

1 Work with a partner. Put the words in the correct column. Some can go in more than one column.

airport	railway station	bus stop	flight
season ticket	waiting room	ticket office	platform
departure board	arrivals	buffet car	double-decker
travel card	customs	hand luggage	boarding pass
timetable	check-in desk		

Bus	Train	Plane

2 12.11 Listen to three announcements. Are they for *bus*, *train* or *plane*?

3 12.11 Listen again. Write down all the numbers you hear. Work with a partner. What do they refer to? Which places can you remember?

4 Read these lines. Are they for *bus*, *train* or *plane*?

1 The number 36 stops near the museum.
2 The platform number has just gone up on the departures board.
3 Does the number 24 go to Natural History Museum?
4 How many pieces of hand luggage have you got?
5 You board from Gate 9 at 10.20.
6 You'll want a day return.

5 Put the lines in **A** and **B** in the correct order to make two conversations. Where are the people?

Conversation 1

A	B
☐ At 9.55. The platform number has just gone up on the departures board.	☐ Oh, yes. I can see. Thank you very much.
☐ 1 Next please!	☐ Yes, I am.
☐ Are you coming back today?	☐ A return ticket to Oxford, please.
☐ Yes, of course.	☐ Thank you. What time does the next train leave?
☐ Have a good journey!	☐ Can I pay contactless?
☐ Then you'll want a day return. That's £15.40.	

Conversation 2

A	B
☐ And where can I get a ticket?	☐ Don't mention it.
☐ Oh, OK. Thanks for your help.	☐ There's a machine next to the bus stop.
☐ Where can I get the 157?	☐ No, it doesn't. You need the 157. It stops just near the museum.
☐ Excuse me, does the number 24 go to the Natural History Museum?	☐ From that bus stop over there.

12.12 Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

6 12.13 Listen and complete. Where are Lexi and Abby? Practise the conversation.

X Good morning. Have you _____ _____ online?
A Yes, we have.
X Fine. How many _____ have you got?
L We haven't got _____, just _____ _____.
X Oh, yes. Can you put them on the scales?
A Here you are …
X They're fine. And how many pieces of _____ _____?
L Just these _____ _____.
X They're fine, too. You _____ from Gate 9 at 10.20.
L Where do we go now?
X To the security check and _____ gate. They're over there. Have a nice _____!
A Thanks very much. Goodbye.



Go online for more **speaking** practice

Writing A poem

Choosing the right word

1 Work with a partner. Match the question words and answers.

What … ?	Nobody.
Where … ?	Because I needed a holiday.
When … ?	Last September.
Why … ?	Spain.
Who … ?	A backpack.
How … ?	The big blue one.
Which … ?	It's mine.
Whose … ?	By boat.

Complete the questions to suit the answers.

What did you take on holiday? **A backpack.**

2 Read the poem called *Why did you leave?* It has lots of questions in it. Who do you think is asking the questions? Who is answering them? What is the poem about?

3 Discuss with your partner which words best complete the lines of the poem. Read some verses aloud to the class.

4 12.14 Listen to the poem. Compare your choices. Do you think any of your ideas are better than those in the poem?

5 Write more verses. Complete these lines.

Who did you meet?
I met …
Who did you meet?
I met …

How can we help you?
You …
How can we help you?
You …

What have you learned?
I've learned …
What have you learned?
I've learned …

6 Read your verses to the class. Whose lines are most interesting?

Why did you leave?

When did you leave?
I left at four in the _____. (afternoon/morning)
When did you leave?
When the house was _____. (asleep/awake)

Where have you gone?
To a _____, crowded city. (noisy/huge)
Where have you gone?
To a _____ where no one knows me. (hotel/place)

What did you take?
Some money. Not my _____. (photographs/mobile phone)
What did you take?
Not much. Just _____. (memories/my passport)

How did you travel?
By _____. By _____. (taxi/land) (plane/sea)
How did you travel?
I travelled alone. I have _____ travelled alone. (always/never)

Why did you leave?
Because I wanted to see _____. (my cousins/the world)
Why did you leave?
Because nobody listened.
No one has ever listened to _____. (my problems/me)

Why don't they listen?
I don't know. I have never _____. (known/understood)
Why don't they listen?
Because I have very little to _____. (say/discuss)

When are you coming home?
When I have become _____. (somebody/rich)
Do not wait.

Anon.



Go online for more **writing** practice

Audioscript

Unit 1

1.1 The alphabet

A-B-C-D-E-F-G-H-I-J-K-L-M-N-O-
P-Q-R-S-T-U-V-W-X-Y-Z

1.2 At a conference

A Hello. What's your first name?
B My name's Ryan.
A And what's your surname?
B Thompson.
A How do you spell that?
B T – H – O – M – P – S – O – N.
A And where are you from, Ryan?
B I'm from Sydney. I'm Australian.
A Thank you very much.

1.3 Meeting people

C Hello. My name's Cathy. What's your name?
D Dan.
C Where are you from, Dan?
D I'm from Cambridge. Where are you from?
C I'm from Cambridge, too!
D Oh, nice to meet you!

1.4 Personal information

1 What's his surname?
Thompson.
2 What's his first name?
Ryan.
3 Where's he from?
Sydney.
4 How old is he?
30.
5 What's his phone number?
312–555–0749
6 What's his email address?
rythompson@tmail.com
7 Is he married?
No, he isn't.

1.5 Questions about Charlotta

1 What's her surname?
2 What's her first name?
3 Where's she from?
4 How old is she?
5 What's her phone number?
6 What's her email address?
7 Is she married?

1.6 Jason's family

See p12.

1.7

1 I go to University College London.
2 I have a brother and a sister.
3 I live with my parents in a house in West London.
4 My family really like Amy!

1.8 The verb *to be*

1 Where are you from?
2 **A** Are you from London?
B Yes, I am.
3 **A** How old are you?
B I'm 17.
4 **A** Are your sisters married?
B No, they aren't.
5 I like you. You're my friend.
6 Marta isn't from Italy, she's from Hungary.
7 **A** Is your mother a doctor?
B No, she isn't.
8 I'm not German, I'm French.

1.9 Pronunciation

1 She's from Italy.
2 What's his name?
3 We aren't English.
4 He's a teacher from England.
5 My sister isn't married.
6 Your French is good.

1.10 Names

1 My name's Vanessa. That's V-A-N-E-double S-A.
2 My first name's Joseph. That's J-O-S-E-P-H. My surname's Bowen. That's B-O-W-E-N.
3 My name's Katie Matthews. That's Katie, K-A-T-I-E, and Matthews, M-A-T-T-H-E-W-S.
4 My email address is l.hunt8@mailserve.com. That's L dot H-U-N-T eight, at mailserve dot com.
5 My email address is zac.yates@plusmail.co.uk. That's Zac, Z-A-C, dot Yates, Y-A-T-E-S, at plusmail dot co dot uk.

1.11 Maria's blog

See p14.

1.12 Questions about Maria

1 **A** Where's Maria from?
B Spain.
2 **A** Where's her school?
B In the centre of London.
3 **A** What's her English family's name?
B Cole.
4 **A** Where's their house?
B In Notting Hill, in West London.
5 **A** How old are the two brothers?
B Ethan is 16 and Jason is 21.
6 **A** What's Debbie's job?
B She's a teacher.
7 **A** Is the weather OK?
B Yes, it is. It's cold but sunny.

1.13 Where's Maria?

1 **A** Goodbye Maria! Have a good day at school!
M Thank you. And you have a good day at work!
2 **D** Good morning, Maria! Where's your homework?
M It's here, Debbie.
3 **M** Hello Carlos! Where are you from?
C I'm from Mexico.
4 **M** One student ticket, please.
A The National Gallery is free.
M Oh, great! Thank you!
5 **M** Tortilla, and a coke, please!
W Certainly. … Here you are.
M Thank you.

1.14 Max's family

Max
My family isn't very big. I have a brother, Jacob, he's 25, and a sister, Lily, she's 18. They're not married. I'm married, my wife's name is Michelle. We have two children, a daughter, Sophie, that's S-O-P-H-I-E, she's 4, and a son, Sam, he's only six months old. We live near my parents. My dad's name is Tom, and my mum's name is Nicole, that's N-I-C-O-L-E. She's French. My grandmother lives with them – her name's Claire. She's my dad's mum.

1.15 Everyday conversations

1 **A** Hello, John. How are you?
B I'm OK, thank you. And you?
A Good, thanks.
2 **A** Hi, Jill. How are you?
B I'm all right, thanks. And you?
A Not bad, thanks.
3 **A** Good morning, Mr Jones. How are you today?
B I'm very well, thank you. And you?
A I'm fine, thank you.
4 **A** Hello, Mrs Fox. How are you?
B Fine, thank you. And you?
A Not bad, thanks.

1.16 Everyday conversations

1 **A** It's time for school. Bye, Mum!
B Goodbye darling! Have a good day!
A Thanks. See you later!
2 **C** Morning! How are you today?
D I'm fine, thanks. Can I have an espresso, please?
C Yes, of course. Anything else?
D No, thanks.
3 **E** Good afternoon! Can I help you?
F No, thank you. We're just looking.
E That's fine.
4 **G** Bob, this is Jane. She's from our New York office.
H Hello, Jane. Pleased to meet you.
I Hello, Bob. Nice to meet you, too.
5 **J** Thank goodness it's Friday! Bye, Simon!
K Bye, Jeff. Have a good weekend!
J Thanks. Same to you.
K See you on Monday.
6 **L** Good night! Sleep well!
M Nigh' night. See you in the morning!

Unit 2

2.1

James Stuart, Fireman
James, 26, is a fireman. He comes from Scotland, but now he lives in Sussex, England. He works at a small fire station near Brighton. James drives the fire engines. He works 10 days a month. He's at work for 24 hours, and then he has 48 hours off. It's a difficult job, but he likes it.
He's married, with two children, and on his free days he takes Lara (6) to school and enjoys playing with Max (4). He also goes to the gym, and he plays snooker.

Maggie Howell, Zoologist
Maggie, 45, is a zoologist. She studies wolves and she's the Director of the Wolf Conservation Centre in New York State. She lives in Connecticut and works with her husband, Spencer. Maggie also visits schools and teaches children about wolves. She works 5 days a week, but she goes to the Wolf Centre on Sundays, too, because she likes it there! In her free time, she reads a lot, and watches TV with her daughter, Eleanor. She also plays tennis, and walks their dog, Drew.

2.2 Pronunciation

/s/ likes works visits walks
/z/ comes lives goes plays
/ɪz/ teaches watches

2.3 James and Maggie

1 James is a fireman. Maggie is a zoologist.
2 She comes from the US. He comes from Scotland.
3 James lives in England. Maggie lives in Connecticut.
4 She works at the Wolf Centre. He works at a fire station.
5 He drives fire engines. She visits schools and teaches children about wolves.
6 Maggie likes her job, and James likes his job, too.
7 He goes to the gym in his free time. She walks her dog.
8 She plays tennis. He plays snooker.
9 Maggie is married. Her husband's name is Spencer. James is married, too.

2.4 Questions and negatives

1 **A** What does James do?
B He's a fireman.
2 **A** Where does he come from?
B He comes from Scotland.
3 **A** Does he live in Scotland?
B No, he doesn't.
4 **A** Does he live in England?
B Yes, he does.
5 **A** Does he play tennis?
B No, he doesn't play tennis. He plays snooker.

2.5 Grammar and pronunciation

A Does he play football?
B Yes, he does.
C No, he doesn't.

2.6 Questions and answers about James

1 **A** Where does James work?
B At a fire station.
2 **A** Does he drive the fire engines?
B Yes, he does.
3 **A** How many days a month does he work?
B Ten.
4 **A** What does he do in his free time?
B He goes to the gym and he plays snooker.
5 **A** Does he like his job?
6 **A** Does he have a dog?
B No, he doesn't.

2.7 Natalie Portman & Gareth Bale

1 Natalie lives in England.
2 She comes from France.
3 She speaks German.
4 She goes to the gym in her free time.
5 Gareth comes from Scotland.
6 He works in Barcelona.
7 He speaks Italian.
8 He plays football in his free time.

2.8 Stress and intonation

1 **A** Natalie lives in England.
B No, she doesn't. She lives in the US.
2 **A** She comes from France.
B No, she doesn't. She comes from Israel.
3 **A** She speaks German.
B No, she doesn't. She speaks English, Hebrew, and French.
4 **A** She goes to the gym in her free time.
B No, she doesn't. She reads, dances, and goes ice-skating.
5 **A** Gareth comes from Scotland.
B No, he doesn't. He comes from Wales.
6 **A** He works in Barcelona.
B No, he doesn't. He works in Madrid.
7 **A** He speaks Italian.
B No, he doesn't. He speaks English and Spanish.
8 **A** He plays football in his free time.
B No, he doesn't. He plays golf in his free time.

2.9 Talking about family and friends

1 **A** My husband comes from Peru.
B Where exactly in Peru?
A From the capital, Lima.
2 **A** My grandmother lives very near us.
B Does she visit you often?
A Yes, she does. Every weekend.
3 **A** My mother loves reading.
B What does she read?
A She likes detective stories.
4 **A** My father travels a lot in his job.
B Where does he go?
A He goes to Germany a lot. He's in Berlin this week.
5 **A** My sister speaks Spanish very well. She wants to learn Italian, too
B Does she want to be an interpreter?
A No, she doesn't. She wants to be a teacher.
6 **A** My brother plays video games all the time.
B What does he like playing?
A He plays the FIFA football game a lot.
7 **A** My friend Jim writes an Internet blog.
B What does he write about?
A It's all about films and film stars.

2.10 Five conversations

1 **A** Does Richard like his new job?
B No, he doesn't. He works 10 hours a day and it's very difficult.
2 **A** Your friend Marta speaks English very well.
B Yes, she does. She goes to England every year. She speaks French, too.
3 **A** Is your sister a student?
B Yes. She goes to Bristol University. She studies medicine and she wants to be a doctor.
4 **A** What does your grandfather do all the time?
B Well, he watches TV a lot, but he plays golf with friends, and he likes dancing, too.
5 **A** Does your son drive?
B Yes. He loves driving his old Mini to school every day. He drives my BMW at the weekend, too!

2.11 What do you hear?

1 He likes his job.
2 She loves working.
3 Does he like English?
4 Does she have three children?
5 Where does he go in his free time?

2.12 Jobs

1 She's a hairdresser. She cuts hair.
2 He's a pilot. He flies from Heathrow.
3 She's a receptionist. She works in a hotel.
4 She's an architect. She designs buildings.
5 He's a lawyer. He works for a top law firm.
6 He's a taxi driver. He drives all day.
7 They're journalists. They write news stories.
8 She's a dentist. She looks after people's teeth.
9 She's a nurse. She works in the City Hospital.
10 He's an accountant. He likes working with money.

2.13 What do they do?

1 **A** What does Michael do?
B He's a journalist. He writes for *The Times* newspaper.
A Oh, that's interesting.
2 **C** What does your father do?
D He's an architect. He designs houses and apartment buildings.
C And your mother? What does she do?
D She's a teacher. She teaches French and Spanish.
3 **E** Does your sister work in the town centre?
F Yes. She's a receptionist. She works in the Ritz Hotel.
4 **G** Are you a doctor?
H No, I'm not. I'm a nurse.
G Oh, but I want to see a doctor.
5 **I** My brother's a pilot with British Airways. He travels all around the world.
J My brother travels a lot, too – in London! He's a taxi driver.

2.14 What time is it?

a It's five o'clock.
b It's eight o'clock.
c It's half past five.
d It's half past eleven.
e It's quarter past five.
f It's quarter past two.
g It's quarter to six.
h It's quarter to nine.
i It's five past five.
j It's ten past five.
k It's twenty past five.
l It's twenty-five past seven.
m It's twenty-five to six.
n It's twenty past three.
o It's ten to six.
p It's five to ten.

2.15

c It's five-thirty.
e It's five fifteen.
g It's five-forty-five.
i It's five-oh-five.

2.16 Just after four

1 It's just after four o'clock.
It's three minutes past four.
2 It's nearly three o'clock.
It's two minutes to three.
3 I think it's about half past two.

2.17

A It's twenty to twelve.
B It's eight fifteen.
C It's ten past three.
D It's nearly two o'clock.

2.18 What's the time?

1 **A** Excuse me. Can you tell me the time, please?
B Yes, of course. It's just after eight o'clock.
A Thank you very much.
2 **C** What's the time in Sydney right now?
D It's nearly eleven o'clock at night.
C Oh! That's why you want more coffee!
3 **E** What time does your watch say?
F Er, it says it's eight fifty-seven.
E Ah, I think my watch is wrong. It says eight fifty-two.
4 **G** Excuse me. What time does the gym close?
H At ten o'clock.
G And what time is it now?
H It's twenty-five to. You're OK. No need to hurry.
G Thank you.

2.19 Natalie Portman

Natalie Portman is American and Israeli. Portman is her grandmother's name – Natalie's real name is Hershlag. Her father is a doctor and her mother is an artist. She lives in Los Angeles now – she likes it because 'everyone smiles there'. Natalie works all over the world. Paris and Berlin are two of her favourite cities and she loves to visit them.

Natalie is married to the French dancer Benjamin Millepied. They have two children – their names are Aleph and Amalia.
She dances and ice-skates in her free time, and loves cooking. She is a vegetarian – she says she doesn't want to eat animals because she loves them so much.
Natalie has an IQ of 140. She is very interested in psychology and has a degree in it from Harvard University. She is only 5' 3" (160cm) but she's an actress with a very big name.

Unit 3

3.1 Sport is my life

'I work hard ... but I'm lucky! I love what I do.' says Logan Cooper. Logan Cooper is 19 years old. He comes from Perth, Australia, but he now lives in Newcastle, in the north of England. He's a rugby player. He plays rugby for the *The Newcastle Rebels* and he trains every day from Monday to Friday for the BIG game on Saturday. Sunday is his one free day, his day off! He doesn't do much on Sundays. He has a flat near the sports ground with Tony, another player from the team. Every summer he goes back to Australia for one month. One day he hopes to play rugby for his country.

3.2 Questions and negatives

1 I Where do you come from?
L Perth, Australia.
2 I Where do you live now?
L Newcastle, in the North of England.
3 I Do you like rugby a lot?
L Yes, I do. I love it.
4 I Do you train hard?
L Yes, we do.
5 I Do you relax on Saturdays?
L No, I don't. We always play matches.
6 I Do you play rugby on Sundays?
L No, we don't. It's our day off.

3.3 'I live for my sport, I love it!'

We train hard every weekday, usually at the sports ground, but sometimes we go running or cycling in the countryside. We cycle for miles, often to the sea. I really love the beaches near Newcastle, they're beautiful, but I don't go swimming there – I never swim – the North Sea is too cold. It's freezing, summer and winter, not like in Australia! Tony goes swimming sometimes – but then he doesn't feel the cold ... he's from Newcastle!
Saturday is the BIG day, Match Day! On Friday evening Tony always cooks a huge meal for us, white rice or potatoes, with chicken and green vegetables, but of course we don't drink any alcohol! I love the excitement on Saturday – especially when we win!
Sunday? ... Sunday, we don't do much, we're so tired. We just relax and watch TV – sport of course. My favourite is the skiing, 'Ski Sunday', and football, I'm a *Newcastle United* fan – of course. Oh, and I 'Skype' my mum and dad in Australia. I miss them a lot. They want me to play for Australia one day.'

3.4 An interview with Logan

I Hi, Logan. Good to meet you. You're a great rugby player. Can I ask you some questions?
L Yes, of course.
I Now, tell me, where exactly do you come from?
L From Perth, Australia.
I Ah, yes. I know Perth, it's a lovely city. And do you like living here in Newcastle?
L I do. I love the countryside and the beaches are beautiful ... but ... not like in Australia!
I Yeah, sorry about that – the sea's really cold here.
L And where do live in Newcastle?
L I live near the sports ground – I have a flat with another player on the team, Tony Jones.
I Great! It's nice to share with a friend. I know you work hard for your sport. How often do you train?
L We train every day – all day.
I And do you always train at the sports ground?
L No, we don't. We often get out of the city – we go running or cycling in the countryside ...
I ...or on the beach?
L Yeah, we sometimes run there – but I don't go swimming. Tony does, but then he's a Newcastle boy!
I I see! And what do you and Tony do on Fridays, before Saturday's match? Go to the pub?
L Of course not! Tony always cooks a huge meal for us – he's a great cook. We have chicken, rice, vegetables ... stuff like that. No beer – that's for after the match.
I And do you relax on Sundays?
L Oh yes, it's our day off. We don't do much at all – just watch TV – sport of course.
I Just rugby? Or do you like any other sports?
L Not always rugby! I like watching skiing and football too. I'm a Newcastle United fan now.
I Good for you! Last question Logan. Do you miss your family in Perth?
L Of course – but I skype them every Sunday evening. They love to hear my news and I love to hear theirs. They want me to play rugby for Australia one day.
I I'm sure they do. And I'm sure you will one day. Great to talk to you. Thanks very much.
L My pleasure.

3.5 Talking about you

1 Q What time do you get up?
A At about 7 o'clock.
2 Q Who do you live with?
A My parents and my sister.
3 Q How do you travel to school?
A I always walk.
4 Q Do you go out on Fridays?
A Yes, I do sometimes.
5 Q What do you do on Sundays?
A I don't do much. I like to relax.
6 Q Where do you go on holiday?
A We often go to Spain.
7 Q Why do you like to go there?
A Because it's always sunny.
8 Q When do you go to bed?
A Usually late, about midnight.

3.6 What we do in our free time

1 Anna
A I play tennis a lot. I'm no good but I like playing.
B When do you play?
A Oh, in summer I play every weekend.
B Just in summer?
A No, sometimes in spring and autumn too, if it's sunny.
2 Roger
R My favourite sport is skiing. I go skiing with my family every year. We all love it.
B When do you go?
R Always in January or February, after Christmas. We go to France.
B And are you a good skier?
R I'm OK. My wife's good, the kids are really good – but I'm just OK.
3 Linda
A Do you go to the gym every day?
L Yes, I do, every day, every morning before work.
A And do you go swimming there?
L Yes. I swim every morning too. Do you go to the gym?
A Well – er, no I don't. I like my bed in the morning!
4 Adam & Josh
A Adam, you like a lot of sports, don't you?
B Oh yeah, my favourite is windsurfing. Me and my brother, Josh, go to surf school every summer and we play golf and football of course.
A So, all outdoor sports?
B Er – no, we watch sport a lot on TV and we play computer games after school.
A Not a lot of time for homework then?
B Well – er ...
5 Sue & Bob
A Sue, what do you and Bob do in your free time?
S Well, in winter we love evenings at home.
A What do you do? Watch TV?
S Yes, we do sometimes. We like cookery programmes. I love cooking.
B I like cooking too ... but you know our family. We love our music. I often just sit down at the piano and play! And our son plays the guitar.
A That's great! You're a really musical family.

3.7 Words that go together

1 I'm a big fan of jazz and rock.
2 I often watch sport on TV. I like the rugby.
3 I always listen to music in the car.
4 I go horse riding every weekend at a pony club.
5 I get up very late on Sundays – sometimes at lunchtime.
6 I like to put on my pyjamas after work and watch TV.
7 I set off for work at about 7.30 every morning.
8 I never win any competitions.
9 I often cook dinner for my friends.

3.8 Dr Susan Hall – an expert on the work-life balance

Of course, work or study is important for us all – it gives structure to our everyday lives. But, for a happy, balanced life it's also important to 'play' sometimes. It's important to find time to relax with friends and family. It's not good to think about work all the time. I know from my work as a doctor that it's sometimes difficult not to take your work problems home – but if you take your problems home you never relax and it's difficult for your family and bad for your health. Don't live to work, work to live! Life is more than work. How many people do you know who really love their work? How many people just work for the money? You know what they say, 'If you love your job you never have to work again!' I think that's true.

3.9 Social expressions

1 A Bye! Have a nice day!
B Thanks. Same to you. See you later.
2 A I'm sorry I'm late. The traffic's very bad this morning.
B Never mind. Come and sit down.
3 A Can I sit next to you, Karina?
B Yes, of course. I'll move my bag.
4 A Is that a new shirt? It looks good!
B Thanks. Glad you like it, but it's really old!
5 A What's the matter? Do you have a problem?
B Yes, what does 'bilingual' mean?

6 **A** Please can I open the window? It's really warm in here.
B Sure. Good idea. This room's really hot today.
7 **A** Can we have a break?
B OK. I think we all need one. But just fifteen minutes!
8 **A** Can I have a large Americano, please?
B Is that to have here or take away?
9 **A** How was your day?
B Really good, thanks. Our teacher's great. And you?

3.10

1 **A** Bye! Have a nice day!
B Thanks. Same to you. See you later.
A Right. About four o'clock?
B School doesn't finish 'til four.
A OK! About 4.30, then.
2 **A** I'm sorry I'm late. The traffic's very bad this morning.
B Never mind. Come and sit down.
A Thanks.
B We're on page 28.
3 **A** Can I sit next to you, Karina?
B Yes, of course. I'll move my bag.
A Thanks a lot. What …?
B Shh! I want to watch the video.
4 **A** Is that a new shirt? It looks good!
B Thanks. Glad you like it, but it's really old!
A Is it? It looks new.
5 **A** What's the matter? Do you have a problem?
B Yes. What does 'bilingual' mean?
A It means 'in two languages'. Look, you have a bi-lingual dictionary.
6 **A** Please can I open the window? It's really warm in here.
B Sure. Good idea. This room's really hot today.
A Lee – you're near the window. Can you open it for us?
7 **A** Can we have a break?
B OK. I think we all need one. But just fifteen minutes.
A No problem, we just want a coffee.
8 **A** Can I have a large Americano, please?
B Is that to have here or take away?
A Have here.
B That's £2.60. Anything else?
9 **A** How was your day?
B Really good, thanks. Our teacher's great. And you?
A Oh, not bad, but thank goodness it's Friday. I love the weekend.

Unit 4

4.1 Where in the house?

living room
sofa
shelves
lamp
armchair
kitchen
cooker
fridge
kettle
plates
bathroom
shower
towel
mirror
toilet

4.2 A flat to rent

R Ooh, there's a flat to rent in Medway Road!
E Is it big?
R There's a big living room.
E Mmm!
R And there are two bedrooms.
E Great! What about the kitchen?
R There's a new kitchen.
E Really? How many bathrooms are there?
R Er, … there's just one bathroom.
E Is there a garden?
R No, there isn't a garden. But it's opposite the park.
E Oh, it doesn't matter, then. It sounds great!

4.3 Questions about the flat

Is there a shower?
Yes, there is.

Is there a fridge?
Yes, there is.

Is there a dining room?
No, there isn't.

How many bedrooms are there?
There are two.

How many bathrooms are there?
There's one.

How many parking spaces are there?
There are two.

Are there any carpets?
No, there aren't.

Are there any bookshelves?
Yes, there are.

Are there any curtains?
No, there aren't.

4.4 Prepositions of place

1 The flat is in Medway Road, and it's on the first floor.
2 It's above a sports shop and it's next to a café. It's between the café and a newsagent's. There's a post office near the flat.
3 There's a dog outside the newsagent's, and there's a woman inside the newsagent's.
4 The park is opposite the flat.
5 There's a bus stop in front of the park gate. There are two people at the bus stop.
6 There's a bicycle on the road, behind a car.
7 There's a playground in the park, and there's a girl on the swing.
8 There's a park bench under a tree.

4.5 *some/any/a lot of*

1 She has some plates.
2 She has a lot of cups.
3 She doesn't have any curtains.
4 She has some pictures.
5 She has a lot of books.
6 She has some bookshelves.
7 She doesn't have any towels.
8 She doesn't have any lamps.
9 She has some cushions.
10 She doesn't have any glasses.

4.6 How much is that?

1 **E** How much is this lamp, please?
A It's £25.
2 **E** I love that picture!
R Yes, it's lovely!
3 **E** How much are these curtains?
A They're £60.
4 **E** I like those towels!
R Yes, they are nice!
5 **E** Look at those cushions!
R They're fabulous!
6 **E** Do you like that kettle?
R Yeah! It's a nice colour!
7 **E** How much are these glasses?
A £4 each.
8 **E** Look at this handbag!
R You don't need any more handbags!

4.7 What's in your bag?

Zoe What's in my bag? Well, there's my phone, and my purse, of course. My purse has some money in it, and credit cards, oh, and I have a diary – I don't use my phone for that – and I have some pens, a blue one and a red one. I have … some water, a bottle of water, and some keys – my house keys and my car keys. That's all!

4.8 Verbs and places

1 You drink in a pub.
2 You sleep in a bedroom.
3 You sit on a bench.
4 You eat in a dining room.
5 You work in an office.
6 You exercise in a gym.
7 You live in a house.
8 You use a toilet.

4.9

It's wonderful!
They're awful!
She's fantastic!

4.10 It's fantastic!

1 **A** Jerry has a new flat!
B Wow! Where is it?
A It's in the centre of town.
B Is it nice?
A Oh yes, it's fantastic! The living room is fabulous!
2 **A** What a horrible day!
B Yes, it is. Rain, rain, rain. The weather's terrible at the moment!
A Oh well, tomorrow's another day – there's always hope!
3 **A** Mmm, this is a lovely meal!
B Thank you. I'm glad you like it.
A And the wine is wonderful, too. Where's it from?
B I think it's French. Yes, it is, it's French.
4 **A** I love your new shoes! They're great!
B They're nice, aren't they? They're Italian.
A What an amazing colour! Bright red! Wow!
5 **A** We have a new Maths teacher. Her name's Mrs Porter.
B Is she nice?
A No, I think she's awful. I really don't like her.
B Oh, why?
A She talks too much. And she gives us horrible tests all the time.

4.11 Adverb + adjective

1 **A** Do you like my new jeans?
B Yeah, they're really nice! What make are they?
A They're Armani.
B Oh, how much were they?
A Oh, they weren't expensive. Well, not very expensive.
2 **A** Look, that's Adam's new girlfriend!
B Mmm. She looks nice. How old is she?
A She's 38.
B 38! Wow, she's really old!

A 38! That's not very old! I'm 36!

3 **A** Mmm, this hotel isn't great, is it?
B It's OK, but my room's not very big.
A My room's really small. And this place isn't cheap, you know!
B Well, yes, but it's not very expensive either.

4 **A** Dan's really clever, isn't he?
B Oh yes, he's very intelligent.
A Do you like him?
B Mmmm, no, not really. He's not very nice to talk to.
A Yeah, I know what you mean. He thinks he knows everything.

4.12 Numbers

eight, ten, twelve, fifteen, twenty, thirty-two, forty-five, sixty, seventy-six, ninety-nine, a hundred and eighty seven, two hundred and fifty, seven hundred, one thousand, one million

4.13 How do we say it?

One and a half
Two and a quarter
Six point eight
Seventeen point five
Oh seven eight six one, five double six, seven eight

4.14 What numbers do you hear?

1 There are thirty-two students in my class – seventeen boys and fifteen girls.
2 I live at 62 Station Road. My mobile number is 07629 34480.
3 A kilogram is 2.2 pounds. A mile is about one and a half kilometres.
4 My father works in a big hotel. There are 460 rooms on thirteen floors.
5 The population of my town is 280,000.

4.15 Prices and numbers

1 **A** How much is this book?
B Six pounds fifty.
2 **A** How much are these pictures?
B They're £24 each.
3 I only earn £18,000 a year.
4 **A** How much is this car?
B £9,999.
5 **A** Just this postcard, please.
B That's 60p, then.
6 **A** I'd like these jeans, please.
B Sure. That's $49.
7 **A** How much is a return ticket from Hamburg to Berlin?
B It's 78 euros.
8 **A** At the moment you get 1.2 euros to the pound.

4.16 My new flat

My new flat is near the centre of town, so I often walk to work. It's not very big, but it's very comfortable! There's just one bedroom, a living room, and quite a big kitchen with a table in the centre. That's good because I love cooking and I can invite my friends to dinner. The living room has one big window. It faces south, so it's always very sunny. I have two comfortable, old armchairs, but I don't have a sofa because the room is quite small. There isn't a garden but there's a small balcony. I want to put a chair there, so I can sit in the sun on summer evenings.
I love my new flat for many reasons – the big kitchen, and the sunny living room – but most of all, I love it because it's my first home!

Unit 5

5.1 Superheroes

Superman:
Fantastic Superman! – he comes from the Planet Krypton. He can fly at the speed of light, he can jump very high, up to 250 metres, he can speak every language in the world. There's nothing Superman can't do!
Batman:
Brilliant Batman! He's a scientist. He's rich and very clever, he's a brilliant detective. He can solve crimes easily. He's a superhero, but he doesn't have any superpowers. He's called Batman, but he can't fly!
Spiderman:
Powerful Spiderman! He has spider powers. He can't fly but he's very strong – he can climb buildings and he can jump very high. He can also read people's minds.
Wonderwoman
Wonderful Wonderwoman! Daughter of Zeus. She's a princess. She's very strong – she can fight very well, she can run very fast and she can fly. She can also talk to animals and understand them.

5.2 Ben's birthday present

Kate Happy Birthday, Ben!!
Ben Wow! Thanks! My two favourite superheroes!
K Hmmm! So, what can they do, these superheroes?
B Well, Superman can do everything! He can speak every language in the world and he can fly at the speed of light.
K Surely *all* superheroes can fly.
B Batman can't. He's 'Batman' but he can't fly.
K Really!? Well, I'm pleased you like the present. 32 years old today … and still a boy at heart! You can play with my six-year-old nephew!

5.3

K 32 years old today and still a boy at heart! You can play Super Heroes with my six-year-old nephew!
B Yeah, Dexter and I have great times together!
K I know! And Dex can do a lot of things you can't do.
B Huh? Like what?
K He can speak Spanish fluently for a start.
B His mother's Spanish, so of course he can.
K But, you can't speak any foreign languages at all.
B I can speak French a little bit. I can say *bonjour* and *merci*.
K And Dex is very musical – he can play the guitar, he can sing brilliantly and he can …
B OK, OK … there's nothing young Dexter can't do! He's 'Super Boy'!
K Well, you're a super-enough man for me! Happy birthday!

5.4 Grammar and pronunciation

I can speak French.
Can you speak French?
Yes, I can.
No, I can't.

5.5 *can* or *can't*?

1 He can play the guitar.
2 I can't hear you.
3 She can't speak French or German.
4 They can meet us at 6.30.
5 You can't always get what you want.
6 Can you do the homework?

5.6 Ben can't speak Spanish. Can you?

Dexter Happy Birthday Uncle Ben! Wow – Super heroes! Can I play with them?
Ben Yeah, of course you can. Which is your favourite?
D Superman of course. He's amazing! There's nothing Superman can't do – he can fly and he can speak every language in the world.
B I know … but you can speak Spanish fluently. I can only speak French a bit, a very little bit.
D Yeah- but I can't fly. But look! I can run really fast.
B Yes, so you can. I like running too. I go running every morning, but I can't run fast.
D But you can ski really well.
B Yes, I can. I love skiing.
D I can't ski at all … but I want to learn. Can you teach me?
B Yes, I'd love to. But what can you teach me? Spanish?
D Er, no, not Spanish … but I can play the guitar quite well. I can teach you that!
B Great! I can't play any musical instrument. Hey- and I hear you can sing brilliantly too. I can't sing at all.
D Everyone can sing.
B Well, I can't.
D I can't ride a bike yet.
B Ah … now, it's important to learn that. I could ride a bike when I was six. And now, I can ride a motor bike.
D There's mum. Dinner's ready. Mmmm … Mum's a great cook! She can cook really well! I can't cook at all. Can you cook Uncle Ben?
B Yeah, I can … I'm quite good in fact.

5.7 What day was it yesterday?

1 What day is it today? What day was it yesterday?
2 What month is it now? What month was it last month?
3 Is it sunny today? Was it sunny yesterday?
4 Where are you now? Where were you yesterday?
5 Where are your parents now? Where were your parents yesterday?
6 Are you in New York now? Were you in New York last year?
7 Can you play the guitar? Could you play the guitar when you were ten?
8 Can your teacher speak a lot of languages? Could your teacher speak English when she was seven?

5.8 Grammar and pronunciation

1 It was Monday.
2 We were at school.
3 'Was it sunny?' 'Yes, it was.'
4 'Was it cold?' 'No, it wasn't.'
5 'Were you at school?' 'Yes, we were.'
6 'Were they at school?' 'No, they weren't.'

5.9 Great talents

1 Pablo Picasso was an artist. He was born on October 25th, 1881 in Malaga, Spain. He was a very clever child. He could draw before he could walk, when he was just 2 years old. His most famous painting is 'Guernica', painted in 1937.
2 Marie Curie was a scientist. She was born on November 7th, 1867 in Warsaw, Poland. She was a very clever child. She could read when she was four and she could remember being just 3 months old! She's most famous for her work on radioactivity.

3 John Lennon was a singer/songwriter. He was born on October 9th, 1940 in Liverpool, England. He could play the banjo and the guitar when he was eleven. He was a member of the Beatles – perhaps the world's most famous pop group. One of his most famous songs is 'Imagine.'
4 Serena Williams is a tennis player. She was born on September 26th, 1981 in Michigan, America. She could play tennis when she was just three. She often plays tennis with her sister Venus. Venus is also a talented tennis player.

5.10 Ben's birthday party

E Were you at Ben's birthday party?
M Yes, I was. But why weren't you there?
E Oh, I couldn't come.
M Why?
E Well, I wasn't very well. I was in bed with flu.
M Oh, you poor thing! It was a fantastic party – nice people, good food, and great music.
E Hmm – I'm sure it was amazing. Ben and Kate always have good parties. Were there many people there?
M Yeah, everyone was there, all the gang. It's such a shame that you couldn't be with us. Are you better now?
E Mmm … I'm OK. I'm back at work but I'm still not great.

5.11 The Kanneh-Masons

See p54.

5.12 Words that go together

1 **A** Excuse me! Is there a coffee shop near here?
B Yes. Can you see the traffic lights?
A Yes, I can.
B Well, it's near the traffic lights. Next to the bus stop.
A Thanks.
2 **A** I can't find my sunglasses.
B Not again! Look in your handbag!
A Where's my handbag?
B It's in the living room.
A Oh yes! There it is and there they are!
3 **A** Oh no! We'll be late. Look at all the traffic on the motorway!
B Don't worry. We can pass all the cars on my motorbike.
A Oh dear! Don't go too fast. You know I don't like going fast on this thing.
B Hang on! I'm a good driver. Off we go!
A Help! Can we stop at a railway station! I want to go by train!

5.13 Words that go together

1 **A** Your son plays the piano brilliantly!
B I know. He can play the violin and cello as well. He's amazing.
2 **A** Do you earn a lot of money?
B What a question! Mind your own business!
3 **A** Do you live on the second floor?
B No, I live on the third. I have a great view. I can see right over the town.
4 **A** You send a lot of text messages!
B I know. My phone is my best friend!
5 **A** Do you wear a shirt and tie when you go to work?
B No, no. Where I work is very casual. I wear jeans and a T-shirt.
6 **A** Can you ride a motorbike?
B I certainly can. Do you want to come for a ride? You can sit on the back.

5.14 Prepositions

1 **A** What do you want for your birthday?
B Can I have the new iPhone? Or is that too expensive?
2 **A** Where's your girl-friend from? Is she Mexican?
B No, she isn't. She's from Brazil. She speaks Portuguese.
3 **A** What sort of music do you like?
B All sorts but especially jazz.
4 **A** What are you worried about?
B Oh, it's work as usual. I have so much to do and no time to do it.
5 **A** Is Paula married to Mike?
B That's right. Do you know him?
6 **A** Do you want to come shopping with me?
B Oh, yes. Can you wait a minute? I'll get my coat.
7 **A** Were you on holiday last week? I couldn't contact you.
B Yes, I was. We were in Morocco. It was brilliant. I feel really relaxed now.
8 **A** Can I speak to Dave? Is he at work today?
B Sorry, he's at home. He's not very well.

5.15 Polite requests

1 **A** Can I have an espresso, and a medium latte, please?
B Yes, of course. To go or have here?
A To go. Thanks.
2 **A** Could you open the door for me, please?
C Sure. No problem.
A Thanks. That's very kind.
3 **A** Can we have the bill, please?
D Certainly, sir.
A Is service included?
D Yes, it is sir. Many thanks.
4 **A** Could you give me some advice?
E Of course. What's the problem?
A I need some allergy pills but I don't know what sort.
E Well, what exactly …?

5.16 Polite intonation

Can I ask you a question?
Could you do something for me?

5.17 Polite requests

1 **A** Can I have a cheese sandwich, please?
B In white or brown bread?
2 **A** Could you post this letter for me, please?
B Yes, of course. No problem.
3 **A** Can you give me your email address?
B I think you have it already.
4 **A** Can I speak to you for a moment?
B Can it wait? I'm a bit busy.
5 **A** Could you lend me £20 till tomorrow?
B I can lend you ten but not twenty.
6 **A** Can you give me a hand with this box?
b Of course. Do you want to carry it upstairs?

Unit 6

6.1 The museum today

Text A
Madame Tussauds, the world's most famous waxworks museum
Madame Tussauds waxworks museum is one of London's most popular tourist attractions. You often see long queues of people waiting to visit their favourite lifelike stars, from Star Wars characters and the US President, to Prince William and Kate. It is amazing that in our technologically advanced world people still want to touch and stand next to models made of wax. It takes four months to make a model and costs about £150,00. There are Madame Tussauds museums all over the world, from Hollywood to Beijing.
So where and when was the museum born? And who was Madame Tussaud?

6.2 Who was Madame Tussaud?

Text B
See p60.

6.3 Questions and answers

1 **A** When did Marie's father die?
B Before she was born.
2 **A** Did Marie and her mother move to London?
B No, they didn't. They moved to Switzerland.
3 **A** What did her mother do?
B She worked as a housekeeper.
4 **A** Who did they live with?
B Dr Philippe Curtius.
5 **A** What did Marie want to learn?
B How to make wax models.
6 **A** Did she like making wax models?
B Yes, she did. She loved making them.
7 **A** When did she start making death masks?
B During the French revolution.

6.4 The move to England

Text C
The move to England
Philippe Curtius died in 1794 and Marie inherited his waxworks. One year later she married François Tussaud and two sons were born, but the marriage was not successful. In 1802 Marie moved to England with the waxworks and her son, Joseph. François stayed in France with her other son. Marie couldn't speak a word of English but she worked hard, and she started touring the country with her models. She visited over 70 towns in 33 years! The English were fascinated by the wax masks of dead French aristocrats.
In 1835 she opened her first museum in Baker Street, London and she worked there until 1842. She died in London on 16 April, 1850 – she was 99. In 1884 her grandsons moved the museum to the Marylebone Road, where it still is today.

6.5 Questions and answers

1 **Q** When did Philippe Curtius die?
A In 1794.
2 **Q** Who did Marie marry?
A François Tussaud.
3 **Q** How many children did she have?
A Two. Both sons.
4 **Q** When did she move to England?
A In 1802.
5 **Q** Did she speak any English?
A No, she didn't. She couldn't speak a word.
6 **Q** Did the English like the death masks?
A Yes, they did. They loved them.
7 **Q** Where and when did she open the first museum?
A In Baker Street, London in 1835.
8 **Q** Did she die in London? How old was she?
A Yes, she did. She died in London when she was 88.

6.6 Pronunciation

worked
lived
started

6.7

cleaned received visited

wanted	watched	decided
moved	interviewed	
talked	opened	

6.8 Irregular verbs

became	went	spent
began	flew	took
came	made	won
cost	met	
gave	paid	

6.9 2001 – the year you were born

L Hey, dad! This is a really cool card!
D Yeah, it's really interesting, isn't it? Did you know any of the events on it?
L Well, obviously I knew about 9/11…
D Yeah – you were born just two weeks after that – on September 25th.
L Yeah, exactly two weeks after. And, of course, I knew that Bush was the U.S. president at that time but I didn't know Putin was the Russian Prime minister.What do you remember of 2001?
D Well, of course the best bit was when you came into the world.
L That goes without saying but what about the rest?
D Let's see the card – oh, I remember the Foot and Mouth crisis – that was terrible, the poor farmers. It went on and on – your mum and I couldn't go walking in the countryside and I couldn't play golf, the club was closed and you know how I love my golf.
L I do – so do you remember Tiger Woods being 'Player of the Year'?
D Oh yes, Tiger Woods, I remember that. And I remember buying my first iPod – that was great – all my favourite songs in one place. You know I'm a big Beatles fan …
L … so you obviously remember when George Harrison died.
D Yes, I do, but it wasn't as shocking as when John Lennon was killed in New York in 1980.
L Yeah, I know about that. What about Harry Potter? Did you know that the first film came out in 2001?
D No, I had no idea when it came out. I saw the film years later with you.
L Yeah – I loved all the Harry Potter books and the movies. Now, the last thing … the Tower of Pisa. Didn't we have a holiday in Italy when I was very young?
D Yeah, you were five, I think, but we weren't near the Tower of Pisa – I know nothing about that – I don't know anything about its history at all.
L I'll look it up on Wikipedia – I didn't know that began the year I was born. Did you know, dad?
D No, I didn't. Your card is full of surprises.

6.10 When a businessman met a fisherman

B Good morning. What beautiful tuna! How long did it take to catch them?
F Oh, about two hours,
B Only two hours! Amazing! Why didn't you fish for longer and catch more?
F I didn't want to fish for longer. With this I have enough fish for my family.
B And what do you do with the rest of your day?
F I have a long lunch, play with my children, watch football, and take a siesta with my wife. Sometimes in the evenings I walk to the village to see my friends, play the guitar, and sing some songs.
B Really? That's all you do? Look, I am a very successful businessman. I went to Harvard University and I studied business. I can help you. Fish for four hours every day and sell the extra fish you catch.
F But …
B … then, you can buy a bigger boat, catch more and earn more money.
F But …
B … then buy a second boat, a third, and so on, until you have a big fleet of fishing boats.
F But …
B … and you can export the fish and leave this village and move to Mexico City, or LA or New York, and start a fishing business.
F OK, OK, but how long will all this take?
B Er – let me think, probably about 15 to 20 years.
F 15 to 20 years! And then what, senõr?
B Why, that's the best part You can sell your business and become very rich, a millionaire.
F A millionaire? Really? But what do I do with all the money?
B Well, let me think. Er – I know, you can stop work and. -er move to a lovely, old fishing village where you can have long lunches, play with your grandchildren, watch football, take a siesta with your wife, and walk to the village in the evenings where you can play the guitar and sing with your friends all you want.
F Mmmm – well …
C Papa, papa, did you catch many fish?
F I caught enough for us today and tomorrow and also some for this gentleman. Please, senõr, have some of my beautiful fish. Goodbye senõr. Come on children, let's go home to mama.

6.11 How I feel

I'm bored because I have nothing to do and nowhere to go.
I'm excited because my football team won the cup.
I'm tired because I couldn't sleep last night.
I'm disappointed because I didn't do well in the test.
I'm worried because I can't find my passport.
I'm annoyed because I got another parking ticket.

6.12 It was really exciting!

1 **A** Did you enjoy the film?
B No, I didn't. I was bored from start to finish.
A What?! It wasn't boring at all. It was really exciting and very funny.
B Well, I didn't laugh once!
2 **C** How was your exam?
D Awful. I'm really worried. I don't think I'll pass.
C But you worked really hard.
D I know, I studied until two in the morning, but then I was so tired today I couldn't read the questions.
C Don't worry. I'm sure you'll be OK.
3 **E** I'm so disappointed. I really wanted my team to win this week.
F Did they lose again?
E No, it was a draw, nil-nil!
F What a boring game!
E I know, and now I'm so annoyed because I paid £45 for my ticket!
4 **A** When's Nina's birthday party?
B You mean 'when was it'. It was last Friday, on her birthday.
A Oh no! Was she annoyed that I forgot?
B No, she was just disappointed that you didn't come to her party.

6.13 Dates

First	Sixth	Seventeenth
Second	Tenth	Twentieth
Third	Twelfth	Twenty-second
Fourth	Thirteenth	Thirtieth
Fifth	Sixteenth	Thirty-first

6.14 Ways of saying dates

1 The first of April. April the first.
2 The second of March. March the second.
3 The seventeenth of September. September the seventeenth.
4 The nineteenth of November. November the nineteenth.
5 The twenty-third of June. June the twenty-third.
6 The twenty-ninth of February, nineteen seventy-six.
7 December the nineteenth, nineteen eighty-three.
8 The third of October, nineteen ninety-nine.
9 May the thirty-first, two thousand and four.
10 January the fifteenth, twenty nineteen.

6.15 Listen and write the numbers

1 October the thirty-first.
2 The thirtieth of January.
3 July the fifteenth.
4 March the fourth, twenty twelve.
5 The eighteenth of February, twenty twenty.
6 The sixth of August, nineteen sixty.

6.16 The multimillionaire Ben Way

Ben Way is 37 years old and he runs a company called 'Rainmakers'. Ben's a computer millionaire. However, he wasn't always so successful. As a child, he was dyslexic so he didn't do well at school. He didn't read or write until he was nine and his father gave him a computer. He wrote his first software program when he was 11. He didn't go to university because at 15 he started his own company. He first became a millionaire when he was just 17. He continued to be very successful until he was 21. He won a business award in 2000, but then in 2001 he lost it all. One year later he started 'Rainmakers' and now he's a millionaire again.

Unit 7

7.1 20th century quiz

1 **b** Henry Ford sold the first Model-T motor car in 1908. It cost $825 and came in grey, green, blue, and red – but not black!
2 **b** The Russian Revolution was in 1917. It started in St Petersburg.
3 **c** About 50 million people died of flu between 1918 and 1919. It was more than died in the First World War.
4 **c** Alexander Fleming discovered penicillin in 1928. He discovered it by accident.
5 **a** Superman first appeared in a comic collection in 1938, but the first Superman-only comic appeared in 1939.
6 **b** John Atanasoff invented the very first digital computer in the 1930s, but the first programmable computers began to appear about 65 years ago.
7 **c** The first colour TV cost $1295 in 1955. In the 1970s they cost around $350. This was still very expensive at the time.
8 **a** Neil Armstrong landed on the Moon on 20th July 1969. The second man to walk there was Buzz Aldrin.

9 **c** The Berlin Wall came down on November 9th 1989. It was the beginning of the end for Communist Europe and the Soviet Union.
10 **a** Universities developed systems of communication between computers in the 1970s and 80s, but the general public first began to use the Internet about 25 years ago.

7.2 The good old days

B Grandad, when you were a boy, did you have television?
R Of course we had television! But it wasn't colour TV like now – it was black and white. The screens weren't very big, like they are now. And there weren't many channels.
B How many channels were there then?
R Only two! But that was enough. We loved it! But there were no programmes in the morning.
B What?! So what time did programmes begin?
R They didn't start till after 4 o'clock, when I got home from school – that's when the children's programmes were on. There were some brilliant programmes for children – I was always sad when they stopped at 6 o'clock and the grown-up programmes started. That's when I did my homework!
B Did your mum and dad give you pocket money?
R Yes, but I worked for it! I did the washing-up every day – we didn't have dishwashers in those days.
B No dishwashers! That sounds awful! So how much pocket money did you get?
R I didn't get much. I got sixpence a week. That's only about three p these days, but, oh, it seemed like a lot! I bought comics and sweets with it.
B What sort of comics did you buy?
R I bought a comic called the *Eagle* – that was full of adventure stories. And … *Superman*!
B What, they had Superman comics then?!
R Oh yes! And they were very exciting to me – they had adverts in them from this strange, amazing country called America! I really wanted to go there!
B So did you?
R No! People didn't go abroad for their holidays then – it was too expensive. I didn't go on a plane till I was a lot older.
B So where did you go on holiday?
R To the seaside in England.
B How did you get there?
R My dad drove. We had a Ford car, a Ford Prefect it was. We went to the same place every year.
B Why did you always go to the same place?
R Because we all liked it there!
B Huh. Well, I'm glad I wasn't alive then! It all sounds really boring!
R Ah, but that's where you're wrong! We didn't have so many things to choose from in those days, and everything we did seemed really exciting!

7.3 Billy's questions

1 Did you have television?
2 How many TV channels were there?
3 So what time did programmes begin?
4 How much pocket money did you get?
5 What sort of comics did you buy
6 So where did you go on holiday?
7 How did you get there?
8 Why did you always go to the same place?

7.4 Questions and answers

1 **A** Where did you go?
B To the shops.
2 **A** When did you go?
B Yesterday.
3 **A** Who did you go with?
B A friend from work.
4 **A** How did you get there?
B By bus.
5 **A** Why did you go?
B Because I wanted some new clothes.
6 **A** What did you buy?
B Some shirts and jumpers.
7 **A** How many did you buy?
B Three shirts and two jumpers.
8 **A** How much did you pay?
B £150.

7.5 Listening and pronunciation

1 Where did you want to go?
2 I didn't go to college.
3 Where was he?
4 Do you like it?
5 Why did she come?
6 They weren't here.

7.6 At a party

O You aren't English, are you Nicole? Where are you from?
N No, I'm French. I was born in Toulouse.
O Is that where you grew up?
N Yes. I lived with my parents and my brother in a house near the university there. My father worked at the university.
O Oh, how interesting! What did he do? Was he a teacher?
N Yes, he was a professor of music.
O Really! What does he play?
N He's a brilliant pianist.
O How wonderful! And what about your mother? What's her job?
N She's retired now, but she was a doctor. She worked in the hospital.
O So did you go to school in Toulouse?
N Yes, I went to a catholic high school. I was there for ten years. Then I went to university.
O What did you study?
N I studied English and Education in Paris, and then I studied for one year in London.
O Ah! That's why your English is so good! And did you start work straight after that?
N No, I travelled around Africa for a few months, then I taught in a school in Senegal.
O That sounds great! And what's your job now?
N I teach in a high school in Paris. I teach English and French.
O I'm sure you're a brilliant teacher!
N Anyway, … what about you?

7.7 Noises in the night

It was about two o'clock in the morning. Suddenly, I woke up. I heard noises downstairs. I got out of bed silently and went slowly downstairs. There was a light on in the living room. I listened carefully. I could hear two men talking very quietly – they said something about the police. 'Burglars!' I thought. Immediately, I ran back upstairs and phoned the police. Obviously, I was very frightened. Fortunately, the police came quickly. They opened the front door and went into the living room. Then they came upstairs to see me. 'It's all right now, sir', they explained calmly. 'We turned off the television for you.'

7.8 Special occasions

1 Happy birthday to you.
Happy birthday to you.
Happy birthday, dear Joseph.
Happy birthday to you.
2 **A** Did you get any cards?
B Yes, I did. Listen to this…
Roses are red, violets are blue.
You are my Valentine,
And I love you.
A Wow! Do you know who it's from?
B I'm not sure. I know who I want it to be from!
3 **C** Mummy! Daddy! Wake up! It's Christmas!
D Hmmm … 6 o'clock ….
C Yes, it's morning! Look at the present Father Christmas left for me!
E Oh, that's lovely! Merry Christmas, darling!
4 **F&G** Trick or treat!
H Wow, what fantastic Halloween costumes! You two look very scary!
F Have you got any sweets to give us?
H Of course I have. Here you are, two chocolates each.
5 **I** It's midnight! Happy New Year everyone!
J/K/L Happy New Year!
Should old acquaintance be forgot…
6 **M** Wake up, Mummy! Happy Mother's Day!
N Thank you, darling! Oh, what beautiful flowers! And chocolates! And a cup of tea!! Well, aren't I lucky!
M And we made you a card!
N Oh, that's wonderful! Aren't you clever children!
7 **O** Congratulations! It's great news!
P Thank you! We're both very happy!
O So when's the wedding day?
P May 5th. You'll get an invitation!

Unit 8

8.1 Food and drink

Tea, coffee, wine, cheese, yoghurt, pasta, ice cream, apple juice, bread, milk, chocolate, broccoli, chicken, bananas, apples, strawberries, potatoes, carrots, peas, onions, tomatoes, eggs, biscuits, crisps, chips, sausages.

8.2 Were you a fussy eater?

M Oh, good, we have some tomatoes.
J Sorry Matt. No tomatoes for me. I hate them.
M Come on Jake! Tomatoes are really good for you. I didn't like them much when I was a kid but I love them now.
J Hmm – I didn't like a lot of things when I was a kid.
M Ah – you were a fussy eater! What didn't you like?
J I didn't like any vegetables. Well, I liked potatoes, but only chips – and I hated all green vegetables.
M Do you like them now?
J Mmm! Not really. I quite like peas but I still can't eat broccoli. I hate it.
M What about fruit? Did you like any fruit?
J I liked some fruit but not all. I quite liked bananas and apples but not strawberries. And I liked fruit juice. I drank a lot of orange juice.
M Yeah, and now you drink a lot of beer!
J Yeah – and coffee. But I didn't like coffee or tea when I was a kid.
M A lot of kids don't like coffee. I didn't like it until I was 16. So what did you like? What were your favourite foods?

J I liked all the usual things kids like – ice cream, chocolate, crisps, biscuits and oh and sausages – I loved sausages.
M All the unhealthy things!
J Sausages aren't unhealthy! And I liked pasta too… with tomato sauce and some cheese on top – that's healthy.
M Tomato sauce!? But you hate tomatoes.
J Tomato sauce is different. Hey, let's not cook tonight. Let's go out to Mimmo's.
M Great idea! It's my favourite Italian restaurant and it isn't too expensive.

8.3 In an Italian restaurant

W Good evening, guys. What would you like?
M I'd like the Spaghetti Bolognese, please
J Same for me, please. I really like spaghetti.
W Fine! And would you like the wine list?
J No, thanks. Just a glass of wine for me. Do you like red wine, Matt?
M Yeah. Let's get a bottle of House Red.
J Fine! Oh, and some water too, please?
W Of course. Would you like sparkling or still?
M Just some tap water, please.
W No problem. Thanks guys.
J Hey, it's our turn to cook for the others tomorrow. What would you like to cook?
M I'd like to cook my very favourite meal.
J And what's that?
M 'Toad in the Hole'. My mum makes the best 'Toad in the Hole' – I can get her recipe.
J 'Toad in the Hole'! Ugh! What's it made of? Toads?
M Of course not! It's made with sausages … and you like sausages.
J I love them. Everyone likes sausages.

8.4 *Would you like/Do you like?*

1 **A** Excuse me, are you ready to order?
B Yes. I'd like a steak, please.
2 **A** Would you like a sandwich?
B No, thanks. I'm not hungry.
3 **A** Do you like Ella?
B Yes. She's very nice.
4 **A** Would you like a cold drink?
B Yes, please. I'd love one.
5 **A** Can I help you?
B Yes. We'd like a table for two, please.
6 **A** What do you do in your free time?
B Well, I like going to the gym.

8.5 Choose the correct answers

1 What kind of wine do you like?
2 Would you like a cheese and ham sandwich?
3 Who's your favourite author?
4 What do you want for your birthday?
5 Do you have any pets?
6 Would you like some ice-cream for dessert?

8.6 Listen and check

1 **A** What kind of wine do you like?
B I like French wine, especially red.
2 **A** Would you like a cheese and ham sandwich?
B Just cheese, please. I don't like ham.
3 **A** Who's your favourite author?
B I like books by Jodi Picoult.
4 **A** What do you want for your birthday?
B I'd like a new computer.
5 **A** Do you have any pets?
B I'd like a dog but Dad says no.
6 **A** Do you want some ice cream for dessert?
B No, thanks. I don't like ice cream.

8.7 The shopping list

M Mum's recipe for *Toad in the Hole* looks easy.
J Good! Would you like me to help?
M It's OK. I like cooking. You can help make the shopping list.
J OK.
M Now, do we have any eggs? And how much milk and flour is there?
J Well, we have some eggs, but not many, just two. How many do we need?
M Three.
J OK, put eggs on the list.
M And milk? We need lot of milk.
J No problem. We have a lot. And we have lot of flour too.
M Great! And vegetable oil? How much oil is there?
J There's some but not a lot? Look!
M That'll do! What about herbs? Do we have any thyme?
J I can't see any.
M OK, we need thyme. Now, what else?
J Sausages! They're very important. We have two – but they look really old and sad! How many do we need?
M Eight! Put sausages on the list. Oh, and a large packet of frozen peas. Is that it?
J Yeah! So first the supermarket, then the cooking. I can't wait to try this!

8.8 *much* or *many*?

1 **A** How much toast would you like?
B Just one piece, please.
2 **A** How much ice cream do we have left?
B Not a lot. Just some vanilla.
3 **A** How many people were at the wedding?
B About 150.
4 **A** How much money do you have in your pocket?
B Just fifty p.
5 **A** How much petrol is there in the car?
B It's full.
6 **A** How many children does your brother have?
B Two. A boy and a girl.
7 **A** How many days is it until your birthday?
B It's tomorrow!
8 **A** How much time did you need for this exercise?
B Just three minutes.

8.9 The history of ice cream

See p84.

8.10 The history of ice cream – some amazing facts

See p84.

8.11 A meal to remember

1 John

For me it has to be this. I was with my girlfriend in France, in Nimes in the south. We were students, studying the language, and, of course, we didn't have any money … well … very little money. We knew a cheap, but good, café near where we lived, but we could still only afford one meal between us. We ordered one small steak and some chips to share – we finished it in minutes. The man at the next table had a mountain of mussels and some bread and wine. He looked at us and smiled, then he said – er – in French, of course, 'I'm not so hungry this evening – would you like some of these?' And he gave us a big bowl of his mussels. The café owner saw this and smiled, and then he came over to our table with two bottles of really good white wine and four glasses. And so we all – the café patron, the kind man, my girlfriend and I sat down together and enjoyed delicious food and drink, excellent conversation and a lot of laughs. It was a great evening and a meal to remember for the rest of my life!

2 Alison

This is a very memorable meal for me – er from many years ago. My husband and I were living and working in East Africa, on the coast – er in a town called Tanga in Tanzania. Tanga's a port, so lots of boats came there from all over the world – and – er – some from North Africa – and – er we often had Arab dhows there, selling rugs. We bought one, a really beautiful one, and we still have it. Anyway, because of this, we were invited to a meal on board one of the dhows. We were really excited. What an experience! We took our ten-month-old daughter with us and sailed out to the dhow. We could smell the most fabulous smell as we got near to it. The men welcomed us warmly and helped us aboard with the baby. And there, in the middle of the deck, was one huge bowl of the most delicious chicken curry, it looked and smelt fantastic! Then, … all the men, and my husband, sat down on the deck round the bowl and started eating, just with their hands, taking out large pieces of chicken. Unfortunately, according to custom, because I was a woman, I couldn't eat with them. I just held the baby and watched. Finally, they finished and it was my turn – the only problem was that there was no chicken left in the curry! Just some sauce! That didn't please me at all and it's why I will always remember that meal!

8.12 Shopping list

aspirin
deodorant
plasters
toothpaste
shampoo
suncream
batteries
scissors
adaptor
pens and pencils
notebook
envelopes
sellotape
magazine
chocolate

8.13 Shopping in the High Street

1 **A** I'd like some batteries, please.
B What sort do you want?
A AA, please.
B Would you like a packet of four or six?
A Six is too many. Four is enough.
B Anything else?
A That's all, thanks.
2 **C** Have you got any baby shampoo, please?
D Yes, we have. Small or large?
C The large is too big. The small is fine.
D Anything else?
C No, thanks. How much is that?
3 **E** I'm looking for a nice pen for a present.
F What about this one? It's £25.
E No, that's too much. I don't want to spend that much.
F Well, this one is £12.
E That's better. And I need some pencils as well.
F There are ten pencils in this packet.
E But I only want two!
F I'm afraid I only have packets of ten. Sorry.

8.14 Sounding polite

I'd like a latte, please.
I want a hot chocolate.
Give me some cheesecake!
Can I have an egg sandwich?
Two cups of tea.

Could you bring me some ketchup?

8.15 In a café

A Hi! What can I get you?
B I'd like a latte, please.
A Sure. To have in or take away?
B Have in.
A And what size do you want? Small, medium, or large?
B Large, please.
A Would you like anything to eat? A croissant? Some toast?
B I'd like some toast, please.
A No problem.
B And can I have some honey with the toast?
A Of course. Take a seat and I'll bring it over.

Unit 9

9.1 London or New York?

1 It's on the River Thames.
2 It was first called New Amsterdam.
3 It's sometimes called 'The Big Apple.'
4 It's home to Wembley Stadium.
5 It has 5,800 skyscrapers.
6 The highest building is 310m.
7 The people living there speak 800 different languages.
8 Paddington Bear went to stay there.

9.2 Listen and check

London is on the River Thames.
New York was first called New Amsterdam.
New York is sometimes called 'The Big Apple.'
London is home to Wembley Stadium.
New York has 5,800 skyscrapers.
The highest building in London is 310m.
The people living in New York speak 800 different languages.
Paddington Bear went to stay in London.

9.3 Which do you prefer?

A Which do you prefer, London or New York?
B Well, I'm American, so of course I love New York more.
A I think London's more interesting. And it's a lot bigger than New York.
B True, New York is much smaller than London. But the buildings are so much taller, and for me, that's more exciting!
A Mmm. I guess the weather's better in New York.
B Well, people think so, but it's worse than London for rain!
A Really?!

9.4 I think it's taller

I think the Freedom Tower is taller than the Shard, but I think the Shard is more beautiful.

I think the Underground is more expensive than the Subway, and the trains are more crowded.

There are more parks in London, and they are bigger – and nicer, I think.

I think the weather in New York is hotter in summer and colder in winter. It's also wetter, but I think New York is sunnier.

I think the people in New York are friendlier, but I think Londoners are more polite.

9.5 Larry –An American living and working in London

Well, I like both New York and London, but they're good for different things. New York is easier to walk around, because it's smaller. The Underground is better than the Subway – it's much nicer … but it is more expensive. Of course, there are a lot of older buildings in London, so it's kind of more interesting. And I really love the parks here. My favourite is Regent's Park, but there are so many. I read that nearly half of London is green – that's amazing! I like it here in summer – it's a lot hotter in New York and it can get way too hot there. Winters are warmer here, but they're so grey! In New York winters are colder, and snowier, but sunnier! As for the people, well, generally Americans are friendlier to strangers than the British. Life is faster in New York, though, and Londoners are probably more polite.

9.6 Comparing cities

1 **A** New York is older than London.
B No, it isn't! New York is much more modern!
2 **A** Tokyo is cheaper than Bangkok.
B No, it isn't! Tokyo is much more expensive!
3 **A** Amsterdam is bigger than Paris.
B No, it isn't! Amsterdam is much smaller!
4 **A** Johannesburg is safer than Cape Town.
B No, it isn't! Johannesburg is much more dangerous!
5 **A** The traffic in Mexico City is better than in São Paolo.
B No, it isn't! It's much worse!

9.7 A 'Brit' in New York

I So, Gemma, you're British, but you live in New York, yes?
G Yes, that's right. I'm from Manchester.
I And ... er, here in New York , do you live on your own?
G No, I'm here with my husband, Luke. We *both* come from Manchester.
I Ah. And have you both got jobs here?
G Yes, I've got a really good job. I work for a fashion company.
I Oh, great! And has Luke got a good job too?
G Yes, he's got a wonderful job! He's a gardener, and he works in Central Park!
I Wow! Nice place to work! So where do you live? Have you got an apartment?
G Yes, we've got a lovely apartment in Brooklyn. We take the subway to work.
I So you haven't got a car here?
G No, we haven't. We had a car in Manchester, but here we go everywhere on public transport. It's much easier – the traffic's terrible in New York!
I I know. Well, thanks for answering my questions. Have a nice day!

9.8 *have got*

1 I've got a nice car.
2 We've got three children.
3 He's got a business in south London.
4 Have you got a lot of friends?
5 How many brothers and sisters have you got?
6 I haven't got any brothers. I've got a sister called Emily.
7 Jack hasn't got a sister.
8 Have we got any homework today?

9.9 New York's Central Park

Bow Bridge is one of the most beautiful old iron bridges in the world. Perhaps you recognize it – it's the most popular movie location in the park.

The Carousel is the largest in North America. With its 58 brightly-coloured horses, it's obviously a favourite with children.

Wollman Ice Rink: The most wonderful thing you can do on a winter's evening is go ice-skating here. You can skate to the music under the skyscrapers and stars!

Cleopatra's Needle is definitely the oldest thing in the park – it's from Egypt and is 3½ thousand years old!

Belvedere Castle is the highest point in the park, so you can get the best views from here.

Strawberry Fields is a garden named after one of the most famous Beatles' songs. John Lennon lived and died in New York. The *Imagine* mosaic here is in memory of him.

9.10 It's the biggest

1 The tallest building in Europe is the Federation Tower in Moscow. It's 374 metres.
2 The most expensive hotel in London is the Lanesborough. The Royal Suite there costs £27,000 per night!
3 The world's biggest car park is at the West Edmonton Mall in Canada. It has 20,000 spaces.
4 The most popular tourist attraction is the Las Vegas Strip. It has 40 million visitors a year.
5 The hottest city in the world is Ahwaz, in Iran. The highest temperature ever reached there was 54°C.
6 The oldest city is Jericho in the Palestinian Territories. It dates back 11,000 years.

9.11 Satnav directions

Continue along George Street, past the Bristol Hotel and over the bridge. At the roundabout, take the first exit on the left and drive down Park Hill. In 200 yards, at the junction, turn right onto Bagley Wood Road. Continue up the hill along Bagley Wood Road and through the wood. Drive under the railway bridge and the destination is on your right – Sherford Petrol Station.

9.12 Directions

1 Go along George Street, past the hotel and over the river. Turn right at the roundabout, go along Lake Road, with the lake on your left, and then take the first turning on the left, onto Station Road. Keep going along Station Road and you'll see it in front of you. The road stops there, so you can't miss it.
2 Continue along George Street. At the roundabout, take the third exit onto Lake Road. Continue along Lake Road. In 100 yards, at the roundabout, turn left onto High Street. Continue along High Street and drive under the bridge. The destination is on your right.
3 Go over the bridge and when you come to the roundabout, follow the sign to the town centre. You'll come to another roundabout, and you want to go straight over that one and drive into Town Hall square. Keep left, past the statue, and take the second road on the left, where there's traffic lights. You'll see it on your right and there's a car park nearby.

Unit 10

10.1 A call in the night

Colin Who … ?
Millie It's me Dad!
C Oh … Millie! Millie, are you all right?
M Oh sorry, Dad. I forgot … the time difference!
C Sssh – your mum's still sleeping. How are you doing? Is everything OK?
M It's great. It's lunchtime here in Oz – we're having a barbecue on the beach. We're cooking steak and sausages.

C That's wonderful honey … but I'm so tired. I'll call you tomorrow morning – 8 o'clock our time and seven your time. OK?
M OK Dad! Love you!

10.2 What are they doing?

A What's Millie doing?
B She's phoning her parents.
A Why is she phoning?
B Because she wants to know how they are.
A What's her dad doing?
B He's talking to Millie. He's not sleeping.
A What's her mum doing?
B She's sleeping.
A What are Millie's friends doing?
B They're having a barbecue.
A Where are they having the barbecue?
B On the beach.
A What are they cooking?
B Steak and sausages.

10.3 Where are you going?

Conversation 1: On a train

Tony Hi Mum!
Mum Hi, Tony! Where are you?
T I'm on the train. I'm just doing a bit of work on my laptop.
M Oh, where are you going?
T I'm going to Birmingham for the day to see some friends – you know Ed and Kay.
M Oh, yes! Do they live in Birmingham?
T No, they don't. But they're staying with Ed's mum at the moment. She's not feeling very well.
M Oh dear! I hope she's better soon. Well, I'm just phoning to see how you are …

Conversation 2: Packing to go

Nina Jane!
Jane Hi, Nina! Am I disturbing you?
N No, no! You're not. I'm just packing for Dubai. I'm trying to decide which clothes to take.
J So, what's the temperature in Dubai at the moment?
N 34 degrees!
J Phew! Well, I'm just phoning to wish you 'good luck' and 'bon voyage'!
N Thanks, Jane. I'm really nervous.
J You'll be great. You always speak so well at conferences.
N Thanks, Jane.

10.4 What are they doing?

A What are you reading?
B A detective story. I love detective stories.
A What are you watching?
B The news. I always watch the 10 o'clock news.
A Where are you going?
B To my bedroom. I need an early night.
A Why are you crying?
B Because it's a sad film. I didn't know it was so sad.
A Who are you texting?
B My girlfriend. She says she loves me!

10.5 Correct the sentences

1 She's reading a magazine.
2 He's playing a video game.
3 He's going out with friends.
4 She's laughing because it's a funny film.
5 He's phoning his girlfriend.

10.6 Who's who at the art exhibition?

A Oh, dear! I don't know anybody. Who are they all?
B Don't worry. They're all very nice, I'll tell you who everybody is. Can you see that man over there?
A The man who's standing in front of the window?
B Yes. The man wearing the bow tie. That's Eric. He's American, from New York. He has an art shop there. He often visits London to buy pictures. He's very rich. And very funny.
A Ah, yes. I can see that – the woman next to him is laughing a lot. Who is she?
B That's Charlotte. She's lovely, very clever. She's a professor at the university. She teaches art history.
A Mmm. I like her bag. And who's that on their left? She's wearing a beautiful pink scarf and drinking champagne.
B That's Helena. She's a writer. She writes stories for children. They're excellent. A very nice lady.
A And who's the man she's talking to? He's got a beard and he's wearing a big black hat.
B Ah, that's Anton, he's an artist, a very interesting man. He lives and works in Paris most of the time. That picture over there is one of his. It's called 'The Tree.'
A Really? Wow! It's beautiful! OK – so that's Eric and Charlotte … Helena and Anton … Now, who are those two over there? The guys with the brochure – they're looking at Anton's painting.
B Ah yes. That's Leon and Peter Vine. They're brothers and they're both art dealers.
A And do they work in London?
B Yes, they do. They have an art gallery in Bond Street. Come with me. I'll introduce you to them and I'll get you a brochure.
A Thank you.

10.7

1 A Where does Eric come from?
B New York.
A Who is he talking to?
B Charlotte.
2 A What does Charlotte do?
B She's a professor.
A What is she doing?
B She's laughing at Eric's joke.
3 A What is Helena drinking?
B Champagne.
A What does she write?
B Stories for children.
4 A What is Anton wearing?
B A big, black hat.
A Where does he live?
B Paris.
5 A Where do Leon and Peter work?
B In Bond Street in London.
A What are they looking at?
B Anton's painting.

10.8 Whose is it?

1 Whose is the black hat? It's Anton's.
Whose is the black hat? It's his.
2 Whose are the glasses? They're Charlotte's.
Whose are the glasses? They're hers.
3 Whose is the brochure? It's Leon's and Peter's.
Whose is the brochure? It's theirs.

10.9 *Whose or who's?*

a That's an amazing video game. Who's winning?
b Wow! Look at that sports car! Whose is it?
c Whose phone is this? It's not mine.
d I'm going to the pub. Who's coming?
e Do you know whose scarf this is?
f Who's the tallest in our class?
g Ava and Lena are identical twins. I can never tell who's who!
h There are books all over the floor. Whose are they?

10.10 Whose is it?

A Whose is this tennis racket?
B It's mine.
A What's it doing here?
B I'm playing tennis this afternoon.
A Have a good game!

10.11 What's happening in the world right now?

1 At this moment, 116 people are getting married. The longest marriage ever lasted an amazing 90 years. In 1925, Karam Chand, then 20 years old, married his wife Kartari, age 13, in India. They celebrated their 90th anniversary in 2015. Karam died just 6 weeks later.
2 At this moment, 257 babies are being born and 107 people are dying. On average about 132 million people are born and 55 million die every year.
3 At this moment, 10,000 planes are flying above the Earth. There are also 1071 satellites going round the Earth, one of which is the International Space Station.
4 At this moment, 48 million people are making phone calls. Do you know that more people in the world have mobile phones than toilets and the average person checks his or her phone 110 times a day?
5 At this moment, 144 million people are sending emails. People also text a lot. Worldwide they send nearly nine trillion texts every year.
6 At this moment, 15,000 people are downloading songs on iTunes.
There are 26 million songs you can download on iTunes. 'I Gotta Feeling' by the Black Eyed Peas is the most downloaded song ever.
7 At this moment, the top ten billionaires are earning on average $20,732 every minute. Sad to say that the average person worldwide is earning just $0.013 in this same minute. Bill Gates, the American businessman who founded Microsoft, is the richest billionaire in the world – he is worth $76.6 billion.
8 At this moment, 4,500 people are buying McDonald's hamburgers. McDonald's has more than 34,000 restaurants worldwide and employs 1.8 million people.
9 At this moment, we are throwing away 2,500 tons of rubbish. Every year we create about 1.4 trillion kilos of rubbish worldwide. 46%, is food waste, 27% is paper and plastic.
10 At this moment, 14 meteors are falling to Earth. The world's biggest meteor fell on Namibia in Africa about 80,000 years ago. It's called Hoba and is between 190 and 410 million years old.
11 At this moment, lightening is striking the Earth in 360 places. The average temperature of lightning is around 20,000°C hotter than the Sun!
12 At this moment, 0.15 of an animal is becoming extinct. Animals in danger include the Black Rhino and the Mountain Gorilla in Africa and many species of frog.

10.12 Describing people

1 She looks happy – she's smiling. It's a cold day, so she's wearing a warm, red scarf and hat and long, black boots. She's walking in the snow.

2 He's got a dark beard and he's wearing a cap and … sunglasses – but I don't know why, it's not a very sunny day.
3 He's not very tall – his friend's much taller. He's wearing shorts and trainers and carrying a ball – I think it's a basketball.
4 She's really pretty – she's got beautiful, long red hair and I think she's in love – she looks very happy.

10.13 Everyday situations

1 **A** Beautiful day, isn't it?
B Yes, it's definitely getting warmer now.
A Yes. I didn't even bring a jacket today.
B Me neither.
2 **A** Sorry, I'm late again!
B Not to worry. We're just starting.
A It's the trains! Another cancellation this morning!
B I know. It's awful, isn't it. OK, let's get started …
3 **A** Can I help you, sir?
B Yes. I'm looking for a bike for my 11-year-old son.
A OK. How about this mountain bike?
B That looks good. How much is it?
4 **A** Would you like to go out for a drink after work?
B I'd love to. Which pub?
A The Red Lion. A lot of us are going.
B Great! See you later.
5 **A** Excuse me, this machine isn't working.
B Oh dear! Let me have a look. It breaks all the time.
A I put my money in and nothing happened.
B Don't worry. I'll give you the money back..
6 **A** I can't find my phone.
B Not again! You had it in the coffee bar. Did you leave it there?
A No, I'm sure I didn't. It's here somewhere. Call my number!
ring ring
A There it is! It's in one of the shopping bags.
7 **A** Thanks for the dinner invite, but I'm afraid I can't come. Sorry!
B That's a pity. Maybe another time.
A I'm going away on business that weekend.
B Never mind. We'll meet up when you're back.
8 **A** Patrick and I are expecting a baby!
B Wow! That's fantastic news! Congratulations!
A Thanks. We're both pretty excited. And a bit nervous.
B We can understand that!
9 **A** Bye! Have a good journey!
B Thanks. See you in a couple of days!
A I hope you have a good time.
B I'm sure we will. Bye!

Unit 11

11.1 That's the plan!

1 **Jeff**
When I get home, I'm going to take my dogs for a walk.
2 **Jenni and family**
When we arrive in Corfu, we're going to jump straight in the hotel pool.
3 **Jamie**
When I grow up, I'm going to play for Arsenal!
4 **Derek**
When I retire, I'm going to learn to play golf.
5 **Grace and Molly**
When we finish work, we're going to see a film.
6 **Hannah**
When the kids are in bed, I'm going to sit down and have a glass of wine.
7 **Karl and Petra**
When this lesson ends, we're going to have a coffee together.

11.2

A What's Jeff going to do?
B He's going to take his dogs for a walk.

11.3 Correct the plans

1 When Jeff gets home, he's going to do some work.
He isn't going to do any work. He's going to take his dogs for a walk.
2 When Jenni and family arrive in Corfu, they're going to do some shopping.
They aren't going to do any shopping. They're going to jump straight in the hotel pool.
3 When Jamie grows up, he's going to play for Chelsea!
He isn't going to play for Chelsea. He's going to play for Arsenal.
4 When Derek retires, he's going to do nothing all day.
He isn't going to do nothing all day. He's going to learn to play golf.
5 When Grace and Molly finish work, they're going to see a play.
They aren't going to see a play. They're going to see a film.
6 When the kids are in bed, Hanna's going to do the washing.
She isn't going to do the washing. She's going to sit down and have a glass of wine.
7 When this lesson ends, Karl and Petra are going to do their homework.
They aren't going to do their homework. They're going to have a coffee.

11.4 What's going to happen?

1 **A** Where's Jamie gone? I can't see him anywhere!
B Look! He's up there! Careful, Jamie! Oh no! He's going to fall off that wall!
2 **A** Oh no, that's my sister with her new boyfriend!
B Oooh, so in love, aren't they?! Ugh! Don't look! They're going to kiss each other!
3 **A** Can we not watch the film yet?
B No, sorry. The WiFi's really slow at the moment. It's going to take ages to download!
4 **A** What lovely singing! There's so much talent in this village! Who's next?
B It's Jeff's wife, Lucy! She's going to play the cello.
5 **A** How are Alice and Theo these days?
B I think they're busy getting everything ready. She's going to have the baby very soon.
6 **A** What are those men doing outside Mrs Simpson's house?
B Ooh, I don't know. Look, they've got a ladder, and … Oh! They're going to clean her windows!
7 **A** Come on Annabel! Come on! You can do it!
B Look, she's moving in front! Woah! She's going to win the race!
8 **A** This is hopeless! We should be at the airport by now!
B I know. I think there's an accident ahead – nothing's moving. We're going to miss our flight!

11.5 It sounds like …

(sound effects)

11.6 Rob's schedule

A = Angela, R = Rob
A Next week's very busy. You have a car to the airport at 6.30 a.m. on Monday morning.
R To get a flight to where?
A Brussels, remember?
R Ah yes. And, er, why am I going there?
A To give a presentation at the ExMed Conference.
R Oh, yes, of course.
A You're coming back on Tuesday morning, and you're going to Restaurant Victoire at 1.00, to have lunch with our chairman.

11.7 Rob's diary

R Oh, Angela, this is our last diary meeting! I can't believe you're leaving the company! I don't know what I'm going to do without you!
A Mmm. Yes, well, …. As always, next week's very busy. You have a car to the airport at 6.30 a.m. on Monday morning.
R To get a flight to where?
A Brussels, remember?
R Ah yes. And, er, why am I going there?
A To give a presentation at the ExMed Conference.
R Oh, yes, of course.
A You're coming back on Tuesday morning and you're going to Restaurant Victoire at 1.00 to have lunch with our chairman. Then your driver's going to take you to St John's School to pick Molly up.
R Ah, yes, Susan can't pick her up on Tuesday. But what do I do with Molly?
A It's her best friend's birthday party, you're taking her there.
R Oh, yes, I can leave her there and come back to work.
A But don't forget, you're going to the barber's at 4.30.
R Oh yes, to have a haircut … finally.
A Mmm, yes, it certainly is time for that. And then the driver's taking you to the station, to get the 5.30 train to Paddington.
R What? Why am I going to London?!
A You're going to the theatre, to see a play with your wife.
R Oh, yes, … Susan's in London that day, and Molly's staying at her friend's, because we're going to see *Romeo and Juliet*.
A And you're celebrating ….?
R Yes! It's our wedding anniversary! Oh, did you remember to order the flowers?
A Yes, of course. And I got a nice present for her in that new jewellery shop.
R Brilliant! Oh, Angela, you think of everything! I'm going to be so lost without you.
A Mmmm. I know…

11.8 What's the weather going to be like?

Presenter Here's Carol with the weather forecast for Europe.
Carol Thanks, Andrew. Well, at the moment there's some wet and windy weather over the UK and Scandinavia, and this is going to move to the east over Poland and Germany. Temperatures in Berlin and Warsaw are about 21° Celsius right

now, but it's cooler in London, more like 18°, and cooler still in Oslo – around 17° there. Further east, it's cool and cloudy in Moscow, where the temperature is a welcome 15° after all the extreme summer heat there. To the south it's a bit warmer, 23° in Budapest, and even warmer as we get further south, so 26° in Rome, but it's going to be cloudy and showery across the north of Italy before long, so temperatures aren't going to stay as high there. In northern Turkey, there's some heavy rain, and it's already getting stormy, so temperatures won't get much higher than 21° in Istanbul. France is going to be cool and cloudy in the north, 20° in Paris, but much warmer and sunnier in the south, with a high of 27° in Nice. The rest of the Mediterranean is going to be warm and dry, too. Portugal and Spain will see plenty of late summer sunshine, with temperatures as high as 29° in Madrid and Lisbon. It's going to be warmer still in Greece, and we're probably going to reach 30° in Athens. And that's your European weather for the next 24 hours. I'll be back at lunchtime with an update.

Presenter Thanks, Carol. And now...

11.9

What's the weather like?

11.10 What's the weather like today?

A What's the weather like today?
B It's cool and cloudy.
A And what was it like yesterday?
B Oh, it was wet and windy.
A And what's it going to be like tomorrow?
B I think it's going to be warm and sunny.

11.11 Making suggestions

1 **A** What a lovely day!
B Yeah, it's really warm and sunny! What shall we do?
A Shall we go for a walk?
2 **A** What an awful day! It's raining again!
B I know. It's so cold and wet! What shall we do?
A Let's stay in and watch a film.

11.12

1 **A** What a lovely day!
B Yeah, it's really warm and sunny! What shall we do?
A Shall we go for a walk?
B Oh no! It's too hot to walk!
A OK, why don't we go to the beach?
B Good idea! We could take a picnic!
A I'll help you make it.
2 **A** What an awful day! It's raining again!
B I know. It's so cold and wet! What shall we do?
A Let's stay in and watch a film.
B No, that's boring! We did that last night!
A OK then, why don't we go out for a coffee?
B Yes! We could go to Café Nero.
A Great! I'll get my coat and an umbrella.

11.13 Matthew and Emma's holiday

A Where are they going?
B To the south of France.
A When are they going?
B On May 21st.
A How are they travelling?
B By plane and hired car.
A How long are they staying?
B For ten days.
A Where are they staying?
B In a house in a village.
A What are they going to do?
B They're going to swim, go shopping in the markets, read and relax, and eat in good restaurants.

Unit 12

12.1 He's been *everywhere*!

R Hi Lexi! I hear you and Abby are planning a trip to Europe.
L Oh ... Hi Rudd! Yeah, we leave next Monday for Rome.
R Ah, Rome, I know it well. I've been to Rome many times.
L Well, I've never been there. It's my first time in Europe.
R Really? Never?! That's amazing. I've ...
L I know – you've travelled a lot!
R Yes, I have. But what about your friend Abby? Is it her first time?
L No, she's been to London and Paris before but she hasn't been to Rome.
R Ah, London and Paris. Wonderful cities! You know I studied in Paris for a year before I went to work in New York – another wonderful city. Now, have you ever been to the US?
L No, Rudd, of course I haven't, I haven't travelled much at all.
R Oh, I've been to North and South America so many times and I've ...
L OK, Rudd – you've been everywhere, I've been nowhere.
R Well, I ...
L Oh dear, look at the time! Got to go! Abby's waiting for me. We've got so much to do. Bye Rudd. Maybe one day you can tell me more about your travels! Yeah, one day never!!

12.2

1 I've been to Rome many times.
2 I've never been there.
3 She's been to London and Paris.
4 She hasn't been to Rome.
5 Have you ever been to the US?
6 I haven't travelled much at all.
7 I've been to North and South America.
8 You've been everywhere, I've been nowhere.

12.3 Have you ever ... ?

A Have you ever been to Australia?
B No, I haven't.
A Have you ever been to Italy?
B Yes, I have.
A When did you go?
B Two years ago.
A Where did you go?
B Rome, Florence and Venice.
A Wow! Did you have a good time?
B Yes, I did. It was fantastic!

12.4 Are we ready yet?

A Where's the list?
L I've got it.
A OK let's check through. Er – we've already bought new backpacks. We did that a while ago.
L They look quite big. I hope we can carry them.
A No worries. I haven't finished packing mine yet. Have you?
L Not yet, just one or two more things to go in. Oh, have you collected the euros from the bank?
A Yup. I've just collected five hundred for you and five hundred for me.
L All our savings. I hope it's enough!
A No worries. We can stay with my aunt in London.
L Have you emailed her yet?
A Yes, she's just emailed back. She's going to meet us at the airport when we fly in to London from Rome.
L Fantastic. Hey, look, I've just found out the weather in Rome for next week. Hot and sunny!
A Yeah, it's going to be so good. We're going to leave winter here and arrive in the middle of summer in Europe.
L What about the tickets?
A I think we only need passports but I've printed e-tickets. I haven't checked in online yet. You can only do that 24 hours before the flight.
L Oh Abby! I am so excited. I can't wait.

12.5 *just, already* and *yet*

1 **Q** Have you finished packing?
A No, not yet. I've only just started.
2 **Q** Do you need to buy a new backpack?
A No, I've already got one. I bought it last week.
3 **Q** Have you heard from your aunt yet?
A Yes, I've just had an email from her, but I haven't read it yet.

12.6 Europe here we come!

'I'm really excited about my trip to Europe. I haven't travelled much outside Australia before. Just once, two years ago when I went on holiday to Bali with my family, but I've never been to Europe or the US. I often travel inside Australia. Last year I flew to Perth to visit my cousin, who lives there. It's a five-hour flight from Sydney, where I live. Australia's a big country! Also, I've been up to Cairns in the north three times. I learned to scuba dive there on the Great Barrier Reef.

We've just finished packing. The taxi hasn't arrived yet. We're waiting for it to take us to the airport. I've never flown on a 747 before. It's a very long flight. It takes 20 hours to get to Rome, but I'm not going to sleep on the journey – I'm going to watch films all the way. It's so exciting! I can't wait!'

12.7 No, not yet!

1 **A** Have you checked your emails yet?
B Yes, I've just checked them but there wasn't one from you.
2 **A** Have you had breakfast yet?
B No, I've just got up. I don't want much breakfast – just a coffee and some toast.
3 Have you made the coffee yet?
No, I haven't! Why don't you make it!
4 **A** Have you done the shopping yet?
B No, I haven't. I don't think we need anything from the shops.
5 **A** Have you tidied your room yet?
B Yes, I have! It took ages! Go and look if you don't believe me!
6 **A** Have you taken the dog for a walk yet?
B No, I haven't. It's just started to rain.
7 **A** Have you met the new student yet?
B Yes, I just have. I met her on the way to school this morning.
8 **A** Have you finished the exercise?
B Yes, I've just finished it. Thank goodness!

12.8 Who is this famous explorer?

1 He was an Italian explorer, but it was the Spanish king who paid for his voyages. He wanted to sail west from Europe, not east like

other explorers. He sailed four times across the Atlantic Ocean. During his first voyage in 1492 he landed in what we now call America.

2 He was born in Iceland. His father, Erik the Red, was also an explorer. He was the first European to discover North America many years before Christopher Columbus.

3 He was an American astronaut who became the first person to walk on the moon. He was the commander of Apollo 11 which landed on the moon on 20 July 1969. He and his co-pilot, Buzz Aldrin, spent two and a half hours walking on the surface.

4 He was a mountaineer from New Zealand. On 29 May, 1953, he and Sherpa Tenzing were the first people to climb to the summit of Mount Everest. Some years later he went overland to the South and North Poles and so became the first person to reach the Poles and Everest.

12.9 Conversations with *take* and *get*

1 **A** Is it me or is this room really hot?
B It's you! Why don't you take off your jumper?

2 **A** Is your office near where you live?
B No, it takes a long time to get to work most days.

3 **A** Why was your dad so angry?
B Well, I didn't get home until after midnight last night. I was at Rob's party.

4 **A** Excuse me! How often are there exhibitions in the museum?
B They take place regularly, every two months. Here's an information brochure.

5 **A** Do you like learning English?
B It's OK, but sometimes I get really bored! It takes forever to become really fluent.

12.10 *take* or *get*

1 The best way to get to the airport is to take a taxi.
2 How long does it take if you go by train?
3 I haven't got a camera. I always take photos with my phone.
4 Sue has taken her driving test three times, and she's failed every time.
5 Are you still getting ready! We're going to be so late!
6 The doctor told me to take it easy, if I want to get better soon.
7 It rained on the day we got married. We got very wet, but still had a great day.
8 You can't get on the bus with that big dog. Please, get off!
9 Slow down! Take your time. We're not in a hurry.
10 I get so many email, I don't have time to answer them all.

12.11 Travel announcements

1 The 11.55 for Newcastle stopping at Peterborough, York and Darlington is now ready to board on Platform 10. There is a buffet car on this train. Please check that you have all your luggage with you.

2 This is the number 22 for Piccadilly Circus. Next stop Green Park. Stand back from the doors, please.

3 Flight BA 1536 to New York is now ready for boarding at Gate 58 . Will passengers in rows 12 to 20 please board first? Passengers are reminded to keep their hand luggage with them at all times.

12.12 Where are they?

Conversation 1

A Next please!
B A return ticket to Oxford, please.
A Are you coming back today?
B Yes, I am.
A Then you'll want a day return. That's £15.40.
B Can I pay 'contactless'?
A Yes, of course.
B Thank you. What time does the next train leave?
A At 9.55. The platform number has just gone up on the departures board
B Oh, yes. I can see. Thank you very much.
A Have a good journey!

Conversation 2

A Excuse me, does the number 24 go to the Natural History Museum?
B No, it doesn't. You need the 157. It stops just near the museum.
A Where can I get the 157?
B From that bus stop over there.
A And where can I get a ticket?
B There's a machine next to the bus stop.
A Oh, OK. Thanks for your help.
B Don't mention it!

12.13 We're on our way!

X Good morning! Have you checked in online?
A Yes, we have.
X Fine. How many suitcases have you got?
L We haven't got suitcases just these backpacks.
X Oh, yes. Can you put them on the scales?
A Here you are …
X They're fine. And how many pieces of hand luggage?
L Just these two bags.
X They're fine too. You board from Gate 9 at 10.20.
L Where do we go now?
X To the security check and departure gate. They're over there. Have a nice flight!
A Thanks very much. Goodbye.

12.14 A poem – Why did you leave?

When did you leave?
I left at four in the morning.
When did you leave?
When the house was asleep.

Where have you gone?
To a huge, crowded city.
Where have you gone?
To a place where no one knows me.

What did you take?
Some money. Not my mobile phone.
What did you take?
Not much. Just memories.

How did you travel?
By taxi. By plane.
How did you travel?
I travelled alone. I have always travelled alone.

Why did you leave?
Because I wanted to see the world.
Why did you leave?
Because nobody listened. No one has ever listened to me.

Why don't they listen?
I don't know. I have never known.
Why don't they listen?
Because I have very little to say.

When are you coming home?
When I have become somebody.
Do not wait.

Grammar reference

Unit 1

1.1 Verb *to be*

Positive

I	'm	from Italy.	I'm = I am
He/She/It	's		He's = He is She's = She is It's = It is
We You They	're		We're = We are You're = You are They're = They are

Negative

I	'm not	from Italy.	I'm not = I am not NOT ~~I amn't~~
He/She/It	isn't	married?	He isn't = He is not She isn't = She is not It isn't = It is not
We You They	aren't		We aren't = We are not You aren't = You are not They aren't = They are not

Questions with question words **Answers**

What	's your name? 's her surname? 's his phone number?	Alicia Johnson. 07773 321456	(What's = What is)
Where	are you from? 's she from?	London.	(Where's = Where is)
Who	's Lara? 's she?	She's my sister.	(Who's = Who is)
How How old	are you?	Fine, thanks. I'm 22.	NOT ~~I have 22 years.~~

***Yes/No* questions** **Short answers**

Is	he/she/it	nice?	Yes, he is. NOT ~~Yes, he's.~~ No, she isn't. Yes, it is. NOT ~~Yes, it's~~
Are	you	married?	Yes, I am./No, I'm not. Yes, we are./No, we aren't.
	they		Yes, they are./No, they aren't.

1.2 Possessive adjectives

What's	my/your/his/her/its	name?
This is	our/your/their	house.

1.3 Possessive 's

my wife's name = her name = the name of my wife
Andy's dictionary = his dictionary
my parents' house = their house

Unit 2

2.1 Present Simple *he, she, it*

1 The Present Simple expresses a fact which is always true, or true for a long time.

*He **comes** from New Zealand. She **works** with her husband.*

2 The Present Simple also expresses a habit or a routine.

*He **often goes** to the gym.* *She **walks** her dog every day.*

Positive

He She It	lives	in Hungary.

Negative

He She It	doesn't live	in Belgium.	doesn't = does not

Question

Where	does	he she it	live?

***Yes/No* questions** **Short answers**

Does	he she it	live	in America? in France?	Yes, he does. No, she doesn't. Yes, it does.

2.2 Spelling of the third person singular

1 Most verbs add *-s* in the third person singular.

wear → wears *speak → speaks* *live → lives*

But *go* and *do* are different. They add *-es*.

go → goes *do → does*

2 If the verb ends in *-s*, *-ss*, *-sh*, or *-ch*, add *-es*.

finish → finishes *watch → watches*

3 If the verb ends in a consonant + *-y*, the *-y* changes to *-ies*.

fly → flies *study → studies*

But if the verb ends in a vowel + *-y*, the *-y* does not change.

play → plays

4 *Have* is irregular.

have → has

2.3 Pronouns

1 Subject pronouns come before the verb.

***He** likes them.* *I love him. **She** wants it.*

2 Object pronouns come after the verb.

*He likes **them**.* *I love **him**. She wants **it**.*

Unit 3

3.1 Present Simple

Positive

I We You They	live	in New York.
He She It	lives	

Negative

I We You They	don't	live	in New York.
He She It	doesn't		

Questions

Where do you live?
Where does he live?

***Yes/No* questions**	**Short answers**
Do you like playing cards?	*Yes, I do. / No, I don't.*
Does she go out on Sunday?	*Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.*

3.2 Adverbs of frequency

0% never — sometimes — 50% often — usually — 100% always

1 These adverbs usually come before the main verb.

*She **never** goes out on Sunday.*
*I **sometimes** work late.*
*I **often** eat in a restaurant.*
*I **usually** go to bed at about 11.00.*
*We **always** stop work at 6.00.*

They come after the verb ***to be***.

*She's **always** late.*
*I'm **never** hungry in the morning.*

2 *Sometimes* and *usually* can also come at the beginning or the end of a sentence.

***Sometimes** we go out.*	*We go out **sometimes**.*
***Usually** I walk to school.*	*I walk to school **usually**.*

3 *Never* and *always* don't come at the beginning or the end of a sentence.

NOT ~~*Never I go to the theatre.*~~
~~*I have tea in the morning always.*~~

3.3 *like/love* + verb + *-ing*

When *like* and *love* are followed by another verb, it is usually the *-ing* form.

*I **like** cook**ing**.*
*She **loves** listen**ing** to music.*
*I don't **like** study**ing**.*

Unit 4

4.1 *there is/are ...*

Positive

There	is	a sofa.	(singular)
	are	two bedrooms.	(plural)

Negative

There	isn't	a shower.	(singular)
	aren't	any pictures.	(plural)

***Yes/No* questions**			**Short answers**
Is	there	a table?	Yes, there is. No, there isn't.
Are		any photos?	Yes, there are. No, there aren't.

4.2 *How many ... ?*

***How many** bathrooms are there?*

4.3 *some/any*

Positive

*There are **some** pictures.* — *some* + plural noun

Negative

*There aren't **any** glasses.* — *any* + plural noun

Question

*Are there **any** books?* — *any* + plural noun

4.4 *a lot of*

*She has **a lot of** clothes.*

4.5 *this, that, these, those*

1 We use *this/these* to talk about people/things that are near to us.

*I like **this** picture.* *How much are **these** mugs?*

2 We use *that/those* to talk about people/things that aren't near to us.

*Can you see **that** man?* *Who are **those** children outside?*

3 We can use *this/that/these/those* without a noun.

***This** is lovely.*	***That's** horrible.*
*Can I have **this**?*	***These** are my favourite.*
*I don't like **that**.*	*I don't want **those**.*

Unit 5

5.1 *can/can't*

Can and *can't* have the same form in all persons.

There is no *do* or *does*.

Can is followed by the infinitive (without *to*).

*She **can** swim.*
*He **can't** dance.* NOT ~~*He doesn't can dance.*~~

5.2 *was/were*

Was/Were is the past of *am/is/are*.

Positive

I/He/She/It	was	in Paris yesterday.
We/You/They	were	in England last year.

Negative

I/He/She/It	wasn't	at school yesterday.
We/You/They	weren't	at the party last night.

Question

*Where **were you** yesterday?*
Was he** at school? Yes, **he was.** / No, **he wasn't.

We use was/were with born, not am/is/are.
Where were you born? NOT ~~*Where are you born?*~~

5.3 *could/couldn't*

Could is the past of *can*.

Could and *couldn't* have the same form in all persons.

Could is followed by the infinitive (without *to*).

Positive

I He/She/It We/You/They	could	swim.

Negative

I He/She/It We/You/They	couldn't	dance.

NOT ~~*He didn't could dance.*~~

Question

What	could	I he/she/it we/you/they	do?

***Yes/No* questions**

Could	you/she/they/etc.	drive? cook?

Short answers

Yes, she could.
Yes, they could.
No, we couldn't.

NOT ~~*Do you can drive?*~~

Unit 6

6.1 Past Simple – spelling of regular verbs

1 The normal rule is to add *-ed*.

work → worked *start → started*

If the verb ends in *-e*, add *-d*.

live → lived *love → loved*

2 If the verb has only one syllable and one vowel and one consonant, double the consonant and add *-ed*.

stop → stopped *plan → planned*

3 Verbs that end in a consonant + *-y* change to *-ied*.

study → studied *carry → carried*

6.2 Past Simple

The Past Simple expresses a past action that is finished.

*I **lived** in Rome when I was six.*
*She **started** school when she was four.*

The form of the Past Simple is the same in all persons.

Positive

I He/She/It You/We/They	lived	in London in 1985.

Negative

We use *didn't* + infinitive (without *to*) in all persons.

I He/She/It You/We/They	didn't	live	in Madrid.

Question

We use *did* + subject + infinitive (without *to*) in all persons.

When Where	did	I he/she/it we/you/they	go?

***Yes/No* questions**

Did	you she they etc.	like enjoy	the film? the party?

Short answers

No, I didn't.
No, we didn't.
Yes, she did.
No, they didn't.

6.3 Irregular verbs

To be is irregular and has two forms in the past:

be → was/were

Other irregular verbs have only one form in the past:

go → went *can → could*

See irregular verbs p155

6.4 Time expressions

last	night month week year Saturday

yesterday	morning afternoon evening

Unit 7

7.1 Past Simple

For the forms of the Past Simple, see Unit 6.

*He **discovered** penicillin in 1928.*
*Man **landed** on the moon in 1969.*
*The Berlin Wall **came down** in 1989.*

Questions

*When **did** it **happen**?*
*How long ago **did** people **start** using the Internet?*
*How much pocket money **did** you **get**?*

But:

*How many people **died** in the war?*
*How many programmes **were** there?*

7.2 Time expressions

in/at/on

in	the twentieth century / 1924 / the 1990s winter / summer / the evening / the morning / September
on	10th October / Christmas Day / Saturday / Sunday evening
at	seven o'clock / weekends / night

ago

I went there	ten years / two weeks / a month	**ago.**

7.3 Adverbs

Adjectives describe nouns.

*a **big** dog* *a **careful** driver*

Adverbs describe verbs.

*She ran **quickly**.* *He drives too **fast**.*

To form regular adverbs, add *-ly* to the adjective. Words ending in *-y* change to *-ily*.

Adjective	Adverb
quick	quickly
slow	slowly
bad	badly
careful	carefully
real	really
immediate	immediately
easy	easily

Some adverbs are irregular.

Adjective	Adverb
good	well
hard	hard
early	early
fast	fast

Unit 8

8.1 Count and uncount nouns

There are countable nouns. These can be singular or plural.

*a book → **two** books* *an egg → **six** eggs*

There are uncountable nouns.

bread *rice*

Some nouns are both.
*We'd like three **ice creams**, please.* *Do you like **ice cream**?*

8.2 *some, any* and *a lot of*

We use *some* in positive sentences with uncount nouns and plural nouns.

There is	some a lot of	bread	on the table.
There are		oranges	

We use *some* in questions when we ask for things and offer things.

Can I have	some	coffee, please?
Would you like		grapes?

We use *any* in questions and negative sentences with uncount nouns and plural nouns.

Is there	any a lot of	water?	I don't know if there is any water.
Does she have		children?	I don't know if she has any children.
We haven't got		rice.	
There aren't		people.	

8.3 *would like*

Would is the same in all persons.

We use *would like* in offers and requests.

Positive

I/He/She We/You/They	'd like	a cup of coffee.

'd = would

Yes/No questions

Would	you/he/she/they	like a biscuit?

Short answers

Yes, please.
No, thank you.

8.4 *How much ...?* and *How many ...?*

We use *How much ... ?* with uncount nouns.

***How much** rice is there?* *There isn't **much** rice.*

We use *How many ... ?* with plural count nouns.

***How many** apples are there?* *There aren't **many** apples.*

Unit 9

9.1 Comparative and superlative adjectives

*London is **bigger than** Paris. Paris is **more romantic**.*
*It's **the most exciting** place!*
*This is **the best** restaurant in the world.*

Form

	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
One-syllable adjectives	old safe big hot	older safer bigger* hotter*	the oldest the safest the biggest* the hottest*
Adjectives ending in -y	noisy dirty	noisier dirtier	the noisiest the dirtiest
Two or more syllable adjectives	boring beautiful	more boring** more beautiful	the most boring** the most beautiful
Irregular adjectives	good bad far	better worse further	the best the worst the furthest

* Adjectives which end in one vowel and one consonant double the consonant.

fit → fitter *thin → thinner*

** Most two-syllable adjectives use *more* and *most*, but some two syllable adjectives use *-er/-est*.

*modern → **more** modern → **most** modern*
*polite → **more** polite → **most** polite*
*quiet → quiet**er**/quiet**est***
*clever → clever**er**/clever**est***

1 We can make a comparison stronger using *much* and *a lot*.

*London is **much more beautiful** than Paris.*
*Dave's **a lot more handsome** than Pete.*

2 Adverbs also have comparatives.

*He works **harder than** you.*
*Can you come **earlier than** 8.30?*

9.2 *have got* and *have*

Have got means the same as *have* to talk about possession, but the form is very different. We often use *have got* in spoken English.

have got

She has got a garden.
I haven't got a garage.
Have you got any money? Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.

have

I have a cat.
He doesn't have a car.
Does she have a sister? Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.

Past

The past of both *have* and *have got* is *had/didn't have*.

*We **had** a lovely holiday.*
*I **didn't have** a happy childhood.*
*What did you **have** for lunch?*
*When I was young, I **had** a bike.*
*I **didn't have** any money.*

Unit 10

10.1 Present Continuous

1 The Present Continuous describes an activity that is happening now.

*She's **wearing** jeans.*
*I'm **studying** English.*

Positive and negative

I'm watching TV.
They aren't watching TV.

Question

What is she thinking?

***Yes/No* questions**	**Short answers**
Are you having a good time?	*Yes, we are.*
Is my English getting better?	*Yes, it is.*
Are they having a party?	*No, they aren't.*

Spelling of verb + *-ing*

1 Most verbs add *-ing*.

*wear → wear**ing*** *go → go**ing***

2 If the infinitive ends in *-e*, drop the *-e* and add *-ing*.

*write → writ**ing*** *smile → smil**ing***

3 When a one-syllable verb has one vowel and ends in a consonant, double the consonant and add *-ing*.

*sit → sit**ting*** *get → get**ting***

10.2 Present Simple and Present Continuous

1 The Present Simple describes things that are always true, or true for a long time.

*I **come** from Switzerland.*
*He **works** in a bank.*

2 The Present Continuous describes activities happening now, and temporary activities.

*I'm **working** very hard this week.*
*Why **are** you **wearing** yellow trousers?*

10.3 *Whose ...?* or *Who's ...?*

1 *Whose ...?* asks about possession.

*'**Whose** bag is this? Is it yours?'*
'No, it isn't mine. It's David's.'

*'**Whose** are these gloves?'*
'They're Emily's.'

2 *Who's* is the contracted form of *Who is ...?*

*'**Who's** that girl over there?' = 'Who is that girl over there?'*
'That's Paula. She's one of the students in my class.'

*'**Who's** coming for a pizza?' = 'Who is coming for a pizza?'*
'I'm coming, and Jack and Tracy are, too.'

3 *Whose* and *Who's* sound the same. Be careful not to write them incorrectly.

~~*Who's jacket is this?*~~ ✗ *Whose jacket is this?* ✓
~~*Whose that boy with Jackie?*~~ ✗ *Who's that boy with Jackie?* ✓

Unit 11

11.1 *going to*

1 *Going to* expresses a person's plans and intentions.

*She's **going to be** a ballet dancer when she grows up.*
*We're **going to stay** in a villa in France this summer.*

2 We also use *going to* when we can see now that something is sure to happen in the future.

*Look at those clouds. It's **going to rain**. (= I'm sure.)*

Positive and negative

I	'm	(not) going to	have a break. stay at home. be late.
He/She/It	's		
We/You/They	're		

Questions

When	am	I	going to	have a break? stay at home?
	is	he/she/it		
	are	we/you/they		

11.2 *going to* and the Present Continuous

1 The Present Continuous can also describe a future intention.

*I'm **playing** tennis this afternoon.*
*Jane's **seeing** her boyfriend tonight.*

2 Often there is little difference between *going to* and the Present Continuous to refer to future time.

*I'm **seeing** Peter tonight.*
*I'm **going to see** Peter tonight.*

3 With the verbs *to go* and *to come*, we usually use the Present Continuous.

*We're **going to** Paris next week.*
*Joe and Tim **are coming** for lunch tomorrow.*
NOT ~~*We're going to go ....*~~
~~*We're going to come ...*~~

11.3 Infinitive of purpose

The infinitive can express why a person does something.

*I'm saving my money **to buy** a CD player.*
(= I want to buy a CD player.)
*We're going to Paris **to have** a holiday.*
(= We want to have a holiday.)
NOT ~~*I'm saving my money for to buy a CD player.*~~
~~*I'm saving my money for buy a CD player.*~~

Unit 12

12.1 Present Perfect

1 The Present Perfect is formed with *have/has* + past participle.

2 The Present Perfect refers to an action or experience that happened at some time before now.

*She's **travelled** to most parts of the world.*
***Have** you ever **been** in a car accident?*

Positive and negative

I/We/You/They	have	(not) been	to the Czech Republic.
He/She/It	has		

I've been = I have been
We've been = We have been
They've been = They have been

Question

Where	have	I/you/we/they	been?
	has	she/he/it	

***Yes/No* questions**	**Short answers**
Have you been to Russia?	*Yes, I have./No, I haven't.*

been and *gone*

*She's **gone** to Portugal. (= she's there now)*
*She's **been** to Portugal. (= now she has returned)*

12.2 Past Simple and Present Perfect

1 If we want to say **when** an action happened, we use the Past Simple not the Present Perfect.

*She **went** to Russia **two years ago**.*
*I **was** in a crash **when I was 10**.*

2 Notice the time expressions used with the Past Simple.

last night / yesterday / in 1990 / at three o'clock / on Monday

12.3 Indefinite time

Ever, *never*, *yet* and *just* refer to indefinite time.

ever and *never*

We use *ever* in questions.

*Have you **ever** been to Russia?*

We use *never* in negative sentences.

*I've **never** been to Russia.*

yet, *just* and *already*

We use *yet* in negative sentences and questions.

***Have** you done your homework **yet**?*
*I haven't done it **yet** (but I'm going to).*

We use *just* in positive sentences.

*I have **just** done it (a short time before now).*

We use *already* in positive sentences.

*I have **already** done it (before now).*

Extra material

Unit 4 p41

Student A

A nice place!

1 You want a flat to rent. You and your partner have two different adverts.

Read the information in your advert. Ask and answer questions to find out details about your partner's advert. Make notes in the chart.

Where is the flat? — It's in ...

How much is the rent? — It's ...

How many bedrooms ...? — There are ...

Is there/Are there a dining room/a garden/shops ...?

Street:
Price:
Rooms:
Location:
Shops and transport:

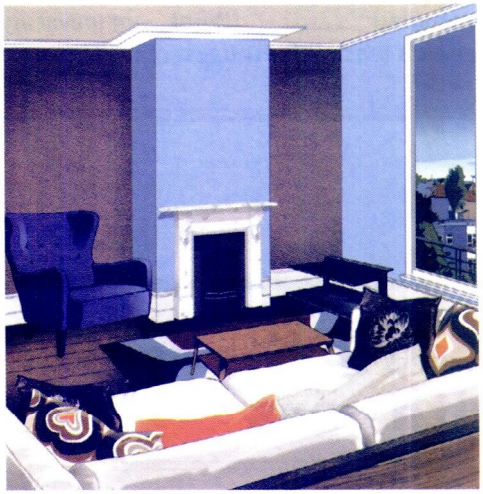
2 Which flat do you want to rent? Why?

Headland Properties

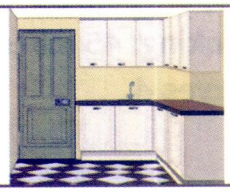
Flat to rent: Hill Street

£300 per week

- 3 bedrooms
- 1 bathroom
- Lovely living room with views over the town
- Small kitchen







A beautiful flat on the third floor, only ten minutes from the town centre.

Local shops (chemist's, café, newsagent's) just five minutes away, with a park across the road. On major bus routes.

Unit 7 p72

Student A

Roger's life

2 You and your partner have different information about Roger Denton's life. Take turns to ask and answer questions to find out the missing information to complete your text.

When was Roger born? | He was born in 1951.

Roger Denton was born in London in [1] ***1951*** (*When … ?*). He had two brothers and a sister. His father was a [3]_____ (*What … his father do?*) and his mother was a cleaner. They lived in [5]_____ (*Where … ?*), a poor area of London. They had a small, old house with two bedrooms and no bathroom.

Roger went to school in [7]_____ (*Where … ?*) He didn't pass his exams and he left school when he was 16. He worked in a shop until he was 18, and then he [9]_____ (*What … do when he was 18?*).

He met his wife, Ingrid, in Germany, and they got married in [11]_____ (*When …?*). They had two children. After he left the army, Roger studied [13]_____ (*What … at university?*) at university, and worked as a teacher for the rest of his life.



Unit 8 p83

Toad in the hole with peas

Preparation: 20 minutes
Cooking: 45 minutes
Serves 4



Ingredients

- 2 tbsp vegetable oil
- 8 pork sausages
- 175g plain flour
- 3 medium eggs
- 225ml milk
- 1 tbsp thyme
- salt and black pepper
- frozen peas

Method

Heat oven to 220°C.

Put the sausages and thyme into a roasting tin with the oil. Cook for 15 minutes until the sausages are brown.

Make the batter. Mix the flour with the eggs, milk and some salt and pepper.

Pour the batter mix over the sausages. Return to oven and cook for 25–30 mins, until risen and golden. Serve with peas or broccoli.

tbsp = tablespoon

g = gram

ml = millilitre

Unit 9 p92

Student A Practice

I've got a bigger house than you!

4 Work with a partner. Imagine you're both film stars. Tell each other about your house. Who has the best house?

YOUR HOUSE HAS:

- ten bedrooms
- seven bathrooms
- two kitchens and staff accommodation
- a ballroom
- a garden with an orchard
- a tennis court
- a swimming pool
- a private golf course
- a private road



I've got a bigger house than you!

I don't think so. I've got ten bedrooms!

That's nothing! I've got eight bedrooms on the first floor and ...

Unit 11 p116

Student A

What's the weather going to be like?

Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions to complete the information about world weather tomorrow.

What's the weather going to be like in Berlin?

Rainy and cold. Seven degrees.

City	Type	Temp °C
Berlin		7
Boston	_____	_____
Cairo		18
Edinburgh		5
Hong Kong	_____	_____
London		10
Luxor		40

City	Type	Temp °C
Milan		9
Moscow	_____	_____
Mumbai		18
Prague	_____	_____
Reykjavik		-4
Rio de Janeiro		24
Sydney	_____	_____

Unit 4 p41

Student B

A nice place!

1 You want a flat to rent. You and your partner have two different adverts.

Read the information in your advert. Ask and answer questions to find out details about your partner's advert. Make notes in the chart.

Where is the flat? **It's in ...**

How much is the rent? **It's ...**

How many bedrooms ...? **There are ...**

Is there/Are there a dining room/a garden/shops ...?

Street:	
Price:	
Rooms:	
Location:	
Shops and transport:	

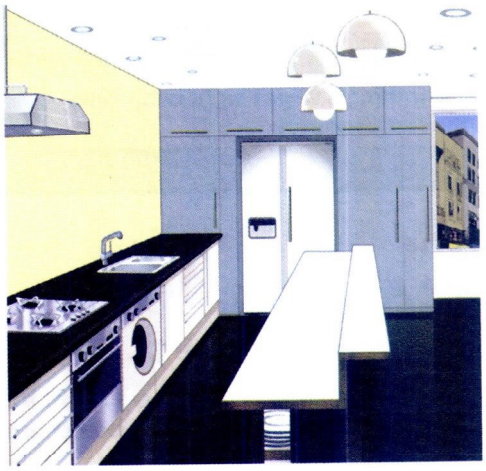
2 Which flat do you want to rent? Why?

Headland Properties

Flat to rent: **Craven Road**

£375 per week

- 2 bedrooms
- 2 bathrooms
- Large living room
- Dining room
- Beautiful kitchen with washing machine and dishwasher







A beautiful flat on the first floor in the centre of town, above a newsagent's.

High Street shops and railway station only five minutes away.

Unit 7 p72

Student B

Roger's life

2 You and your partner have different information about Roger Denton's life. Take turns to ask and answer questions to find out the missing information to complete your text.

How many brothers and sisters did he have?

He had two brothers and one sister.

Roger Denton was born in London in 1951. He had [2] *two* brothers and a sister (*How many … ?*). His father was a butcher and his mother was a [4]_____. (*What … his mother do?*). They lived in Catford, a poor area of London. They had a [6]_____ house (*What sort of house … have?*) with two bedrooms and no bathroom.

Roger went to school in New Cross. He didn't pass his exams and he left school when he was [8]_____ (*How old … he when he left school?*). He worked [10]_____ (*Where … ?*) until he was 18, and then he joined the army.

He met his wife, Ingrid, in [12]_____ (*Where … ?*), and they got married in 1976. They had [14]_____ children (*How many children … have?*). After he left the army, Roger studied maths at university, and worked as a teacher for the rest of his life.



Unit 9 p92

Student B Practice

I've got a bigger house than you!

4 Work with a partner. Imagine you're both film stars. Tell each other about your house. Who has the best house?

YOUR HOUSE HAS:

- eight bedrooms on the first floor
- five bedrooms on the second floor
- a dining hall
- an enormous garden
- a cinema
- a bowling alley
- six garages
- an indoor and an outdoor swimming pool
- stables for horses and a field
- electric gates and CCTV

I've got a bigger house than you!

I don't think so. I've got ten bedrooms!

That's nothing! I've got eight bedrooms on the first floor and …

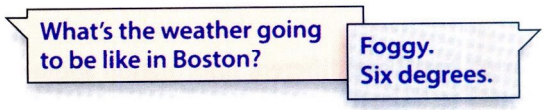


Unit 11 p116

Student B

What's the weather going to be like?

Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions to complete the information about world weather tomorrow.



City	Type	Temp °C
Berlin	_____	_____
Boston		6
Cairo	_____	_____
Edinburgh		5
Hong Kong		29
London		10
Luxor		40

City	Type	Temp °C
Milan	_____	_____
Moscow		-1
Mumbai	_____	_____
Prague		4
Reykjavik	_____	_____
Rio de Janeiro		24
Sydney		22

Irregular verbs

Base form	Past Simple	Past participle
be	was/were	been
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
can	could	been able
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone/been
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known

Base form	Past Simple	Past participle
learn	learned/learnt	learned/learnt
leave	left	left
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
ride	rode	ridden
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
try	tried	tried
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Verb patterns

Verb + *-ing*	
like love enjoy hate finish stop	swimming cooking

Verb + infinitive with *to*	
choose decide forget promise need help hope try want would like would love	to go to work

Verb + *-ing* or infinitive with *to*	
begin start	raining/to rain

Modal auxiliary verbs	
can could shall will would	go arrive

Phonetic symbols

Consonants			
1	/p/	as in	**pen** /pen/
2	/b/	as in	**big** /bɪg/
3	/t/	as in	**tea** /tiː/
4	/d/	as in	**do** /duː/
5	/k/	as in	**cat** /kæt/
6	/g/	as in	**go** /gəʊ/
7	/f/	as in	**four** /fɔː/
8	/v/	as in	**very** /'veri/
9	/s/	as in	**son** /sʌn/
10	/z/	as in	**zoo** /zuː/
11	/l/	as in	**live** /lɪv/
12	/m/	as in	**my** /maɪ/
13	/n/	as in	**now** /naʊ/
14	/h/	as in	**happy** /'hæpi/
15	/r/	as in	**red** /red/
16	/j/	as in	**yes** /jes/
17	/w/	as in	**want** /wɒnt/
18	/θ/	as in	**thanks** /θæŋks/
19	/ð/	as in	**the** /ðə/
20	/ʃ/	as in	**she** /ʃiː/
21	/ʒ/	as in	**television** /'telɪvɪʒn/
22	/tʃ/	as in	**child** /tʃaɪld/
23	/dʒ/	as in	**German** /'dʒɜːmən/
24	/ŋ/	as in	**English** /'ɪŋglɪʃ/

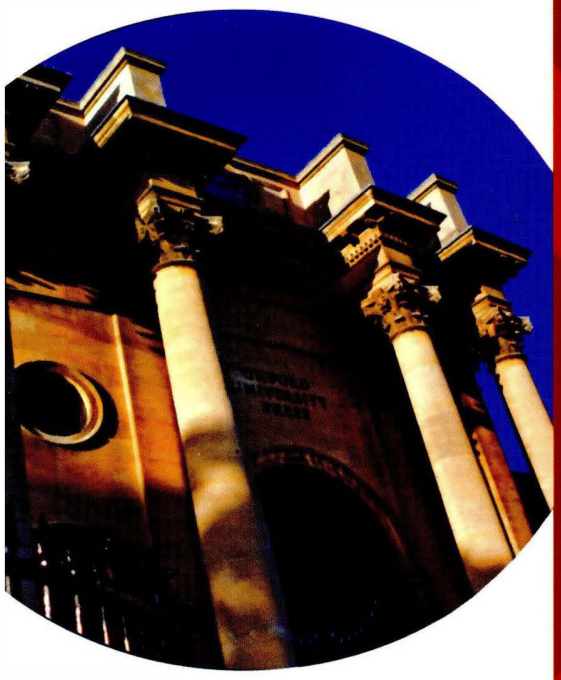
Vowels			
25	/iː/	as in	**see** /siː/
26	/ɪ/	as in	**his** /hɪz/
27	/i/	as in	**twenty** /'twenti/
28	/e/	as in	**ten** /ten/
29	/æ/	as in	**bag** /bæg/
30	/ɑː/	as in	**father** /'fɑːðə/
31	/ɒ/	as in	**hot** /hɒt/
32	/ɔː/	as in	**morning** /'mɔːnɪŋ/
33	/ʊ/	as in	**football** /'fʊtbɔːl/
34	/uː/	as in	**you** /juː/
35	/ʌ/	as in	**sun** /sʌn/
36	/ɜː/	as in	**learn** /lɜːn/
37	/ə/	as in	**letter** /'letə/

Diphthongs (two vowels together)			
38	/eɪ/	as in	**name** /neɪm/
39	/əʊ/	as in	**no** /nəʊ/
40	/aɪ/	as in	**my** /maɪ/
41	/aʊ/	as in	**how** /haʊ/
42	/ɔɪ/	as in	**boy** /bɔɪ/
43	/ɪə/	as in	**hear** /hɪə/
44	/eə/	as in	**where** /weə/
45	/ʊə/	as in	**tour** /tʊə/

Oxford University Press is the world's authority on the English language.

As part of the University of Oxford, we are committed to furthering English language learning worldwide.

We continuously bring together our experience, expertise and research to create resources such as *Headway*, helping millions of learners of English to achieve their potential.



OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt

5th edition
Headway

Elementary Student's Book

Trusted worldwide. Inspired by you.

Headway 5th edition provides fresh, relevant English instruction needed for success today.

Join over 100 million students who have studied with *Headway*'s perfectly-balanced grammar and skills syllabus, developed by award-winning authors Liz and John Soars.

What's inside your Beginner Student's Book?

Learn in class:

- NEW **video introductions** to open each unit
- Thorough **Grammar** and **Vocabulary** presentation and practice
- **Reading**, **Writing**, **Listening** and **Speaking** skills in every unit
- **Everyday English** lessons with functional vocabulary
- **Videos** to support every unit topic.

Practise at home:

Access to Online Practice: look again at every lesson, practise with extra activities and check your progress.

headwayonline.com





Also available
Workbook for additional language practice